

Oracle® Communications

Diameter Signaling Router 7.0/7.1

Software Installation and Configuration Procedure 2/2

E58954 Revision 04

December 2015

Note: This document represents the 2nd part of the DSR 7.0/7.1 Installation Process. Prior to executing this document, make sure that the 1st part was fully executed:

- **DSR 7.0 Installs:** Use document [3] as Part 1
- **DSR 7.1 Installs:** Use document [26] as Part 1

Table of Contents

TABLE OF CONTENTS	3
LIST OF PROCEDURES	5
TABLES AND FIGURES	7
1.0 INTRODUCTION.....	7
1.1 PURPOSE AND SCOPE.....	7
1.2 REFERENCES	8
1.3 ACRONYMS	9
1.4 TERMINOLOGY	10
2.0 GENERAL DESCRIPTION	13
3.0 INSTALL OVERVIEW	13
3.1 REQUIRED MATERIALS	13
3.2 INSTALLATION OVERVIEW	13
3.2.1 Installation Strategy.....	14
3.2.2 SNMP Configuration.....	17
3.2.3 Installation Procedures	18
3.2 OPTIONAL FEATURES	19
4.0 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE	20
4.1 CONFIGURE RMS TVOE HOSTS	21
4.2 CONFIGURE BLADE TVOE HOSTS	41
4.3 CREATE VIRTUAL MACHINES FOR APPLICATIONS	50
4.4 INSTALL APPLICATION SOFTWARE ON SERVERS	61
4.5 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: NOAMs	66
4.6 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALLATION (OPTIONAL).....	86
4.7 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: DISASTER RECOVERY NOAM (OPTIONAL)	87
4.8 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: SOAMs	97
4.9 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: ACTIVATE PCA (PCA ONLY)	111
4.10 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: MPs.....	112
4.11 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: SIGNALING NETWORK	134
4.12 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: SNMP (OPTIONAL)	157
4.13 APPLICATION CONFIGURATION: IP FRONT END (IPFE)	162
4.14 IDIH INSTALLATION AND CONFIGURATION (DSR 7.1-OPTIONAL).....	171
4.14.1 IDIH Installation	171
4.14.2 Post IDIH Installation Configuration.....	176
4.15 POST-INSTALL ACTIVITIES	193
APPENDIX A: SAMPLE NETWORK ELEMENT AND HARDWARE PROFILES	205
APPENDIX B: CONFIGURING FOR TVOE ILO ACCESS	208
APPENDIX C: TVOE ILO ACCESS	210
APPENDIX D: TVOE ILO4 ACCESS	212
APPENDIX E: CHANGING THE TVOE ILO ADDRESS	214

APPENDIX F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM CONSOLE ILO ACCESS	216
APPENDIX G: ACCESSING THE NOAM GUI USING SSH TUNNELING WITH PUTTY	218
APPENDIX H: ACCESSING THE NOAM GUI USING SSH TUNNELING WITH OPENSSH FOR WINDOWS	221
APPENDIX I: LIST OF FREQUENTLY USED TIME ZONES	223
APPENDIX J: APPLICATION NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALLATION PROCEDURES.....	224
<i>NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL USING PLATCFG</i>	<i>224</i>
<i>NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL/UPGRADE WITH NBAUTOINSTALL.....</i>	<i>231</i>
<i>CREATE NETBACKUP CLIENT CONFIG FILE.....</i>	<i>233</i>
<i>OPEN PORTS FOR NETBACKUP CLIENT SOFTWARE.....</i>	<i>235</i>
APPENDIX K: MULTI-SITE FEATURE ACTIVATION (DSR 7.0)	236
APPENDIX L: IDIH FAST DEPLOYMENT CONFIGURATION	237
APPENDIX M: IDIH EXTERNAL DRIVE REMOVAL.....	241
APPENDIX N: DISABLE/ENABLE DTLS.....	246
APPENDIX O: MY ORACLE SUPPORT (MOS)	246

List of Procedures

Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS.....	21
Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s).....	27
Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades.....	41
Procedure 4 Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server	50
Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs.....	53
Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs.....	57
Procedure 7 IPM Blades and VMs	61
Procedure 8 Install the Application Software on Blades	63
Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server.....	66
Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group	73
Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server	78
Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration	82
Procedure 13 Install NetBackup Client (Optional)	86
Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)	87
Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)	93
Procedure 16 Configure SOAM NE.....	97
Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers.....	99
Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group.....	104
Procedure 19 Activate PCA (PCA Only).....	111
Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers.....	112
Procedure 21 Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA ONLY)	121
Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s).....	124
Procedure 23 Configure the Signaling Networks	134
Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)	135
Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices.....	140
Procedure 26 Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic (Optional).....	148
Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes.....	151
Procedure 28 Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only)	155
Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)	157
Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional).....	162
Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional).....	171
Procedure 32 Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH (DSR 7.1-Optional) ..	176
Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)	178
Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional).....	184
Procedure 35 IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional).....	187
Procedure 36 IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)	189
Procedure 37 IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)	191
Procedure 38 IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional).....	192

Procedure 39 Activate Optional Features	193
Procedure 40 Configure ComAgent Connections	195
Procedure 41 Backup TVOE Configuration	195
Procedure 42 Backup PMAC Application	197
Procedure 43 NOAM Database Backup	200
Procedure 44 SOAM Database Backup	202
Appendix B 1 Connecting to the TVOE iLO	208
Appendix C 1 Accessing the TVOE iLO	210
Appendix D 1 TVOE iLO4 GUI Access	212
Appendix E 1 Changing the TVOE iLO Address	214
Appendix F 1 PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access	216
Appendix G 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty	218
Appendix H 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows ..	221
Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)	224
Appendix J 2 Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL)	231
Appendix J 3 Create NetBackup Client Config File	233
Appendix J 4 Open ports for NetBackup Client Software	235
Appendix K 1 Multit-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)	236
Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal	241
Appendix N 1 Disable DTLS (DSR 7.1 Only).....	Error! Bookmark not defined.
Appendix N 2 Enable DTLS (DSR 7.1 Only).....	Error! Bookmark not defined.

Tables and Figures

TABLE 1 ACRONYMS	9
FIGURE 1 EXAMPLE OF AN INSTRUCTION THAT INDICATES THE SERVER TO WHICH IT APPLIES	10
TABLE 2 TERMINOLOGY	10
FIGURE 2 EXAMPLE OF INITIAL APPLICATION INSTALLATION PATH	13
FIGURE 3 DSR INSTALLATION: HIGH LEVEL SEQUENCE	15
FIGURE 4 DSR SINGLE SITE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE MAP	16
FIGURE 5 EXAMPLE NETWORK ELEMENT XML FILE	205
FIGURE 6 EXAMPLE SERVER HARDWARE PROFILE XML-HP C-CLASS BLADE.....	206
FIGURE 7 EXAMPLE SERVER HARDWARE PROFILE XML- VIRTUAL GUEST ON TVOE.....	207
TABLE 4 TIME ZONES	223

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 Purpose and Scope

This document describes the application-related installation procedures for an HP C-class Diameter Signaling Router 7.0, 7.1 systems.

This document assumes that platform-related configuration has already been done. Before executing this document, please ensure that all procedures from [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) have already been performed successfully.

The audience for this document includes Oracle customers as well as these groups: Software System, Product Verification, Documentation, and Customer Service including Software Operations and First Office Application.

1.2 References

- [1] Communication Agent Configuration Guide, E58922
- [2] DSR 7.0 PCA Activation and Configuration, E58667
- [3] DSR 6.x/7.0 Base Hardware and Software Installation, E57789
- [4] Charging Proxy Application (CPA) & Offline Charging Feature Activation Procedure, E58663
- [5] DSR Meta Administration Feature Activation Procedure, E58661
- [6] DSR Full Address Based Resolution (FABR) Feature Activation Procedure, E58664
- [7] DSR Range Based Address Resolution (RBAR) Feature Activation Procedure, E58664
- [8] SDS SW Installation and Configuration Guide, E57487
- [9] MAP-Diameter IWF Feature Activation Procedure. E58666
- [10] Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OAM) User's Guide, E53463
- [11] Communication Agent User's Guide, E53464
- [12] Policy DRA User's Guide, E53472
- [13] Diameter User's Guide, E53467
- [14] Mediation User's Guide, E53468
- [15] Range Based Address Resolution (RBAR) User's Guide, E53469
- [16] Full Address Based Resolution (FABR) User's Guide, E53470
- [17] Charging Proxy Application (CPA) and Offline Charging Solution User's Guide, E53471
- [18] IP Front End (IPFE) User's Guide, E53473-01
- [19] DSR Alarms, KPIs, and Measurements Reference, E53474
- [20] Diameter Common User's Guide, E53480
- [21] Diameter Administrator's Guide, E53475
- [22] Map-Diameter IWF User's Guide, E53476
- [23] Gateway Location Application (GLA) User's Guide, E58659
- [24] DSR IPv6 Migration Guide, E57517
- [25] IDIH 7.0 Installation Procedure, E56374
- [26] DSR 7.1 Base Hardware and Software Installation, E53488-01
- [27] DSR GLA Feature Activation Procedure, E58659
- [28] DSR 7.1 PCA Activation and Configuration, E63560
- [29] DSR DTLS Feature Activation Procedure, E67867

1.3 Acronyms

An alphabetized list of acronyms used in the document

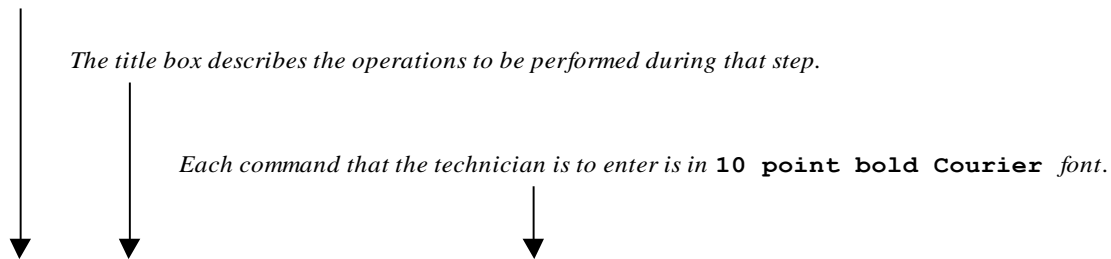
Table 1 Acronyms

Acronym	Definition
BIOS	Basic Input Output System
CD	Compact Disk
DVD	Digital Versatile Disc
EBIPA	Enclosure Bay IP Addressing
FRU	Field Replaceable Unit
HP c-Class	HP blade server offering
iLO	Integrated Lights Out manager
IPM	Initial Product Manufacture – the process of installing TPD on a hardware platform
MSA	Modular Smart Array
NB	NetBackup
OA	HP Onboard Administrator
OS	Operating System (e.g. TPD)
RMS	Rack Mounted Server
PMAC	Platform Management & Configuration
SAN	Storage Area Network
SFTP	Secure File Transfer Protocol
SNMP	Simple Network Management Protocol
TPD	Tekelec Platform Distribution
TVOE	Tekelec Virtual Operating Environment
VM	Virtual Machine
VSP	Virtual Serial Port
IPFE	IP Front End
PCA	Policy and Charging Application
IDIH	Integrated Diameter Intelligence Hub

1.4 Terminology

Multiple server types may be involved with the procedures in this manual. Therefore, most steps in the written procedures begin with the name or type of server to which the step applies. For example:

Each step has a checkbox for every command within the step that the technician should check to keep track of the progress of the procedure.



5 ServerX: Connect to the console of the server	Establish a connection to the server using cu on the terminal server/console. <input type="checkbox"/> <code>\$ cu -l /dev/ttyS7</code>
---	--

Figure 1 Example of an instruction that indicates the server to which it applies

Table 2 Terminology

Management Server	HP ProLiant DL360/ DL380 deployed to run TVOE and host a virtualized PMAC application. Can also host a virtualized NOAM or IDIH. It is also used to configure the Aggregation switches (via the PM&C) and to serve other configuration purposes.
PMAC Application	PMAC is an application that provides platform-level management functionality for HP G6/G8/G9 system, such as the capability to manage and provision platform components of the system so it can host applications.
Site	<p>Applicable for various applications, a Site is type of "Place". A Place is configured object that allows servers to be associated with a physical location.</p> <p>A Site place allows servers to be associated with a physical site. For example, Sites may be configured for Atlanta, Charlotte, and Chicago. Every server is associated with exactly one Site when the server is configured.</p> <p>For the Policy & Charging DRA application, when configuring a Site only put DA-MPs and SBR MP servers in the site. Do not add NOAM, SOAM or IPFE MPs to a Site</p>

Place Association	<p>Applicable for various applications, a “Place Association” is a configured object that allows Places to be grouped together. A Place can be a member of more than one Place Association.</p> <p>The Policy & Charging DRA application defines two Place Association Types: Policy Binding Region and Policy & Charging Mated Sites.</p>
Two Site Redundancy	<p>Two Site Redundancy is a data durability configuration in which Policy and Charging data is unaffected by the loss of one site in a Policy & Charging Mated Sites Place Association containing two sites.</p> <p>Two Site Redundancy is a feature provided by Server Group configuration. This feature provides geographic redundancy. Some Server Groups can be configured with servers located in two geographically separate Sites(locations). This feature will ensure that there is always a functioning Active server in a Server Group even if all the servers in a single site fail.</p>
Three Site Redundancy	<p>Three Site Redundancy is a data durability configuration in which Policy and Charging data is unaffected by the loss of two sites in a Policy & Charging Mated Sites Place Association containing three sites.</p> <p>Three Site Redundancy is a feature provided by Server Groups configuration. This feature provides geographic redundancy. Some Server Groups can be configured with servers located in three geographically separate Sites(locations). This feature will ensure that there is always a functioning Active server in a Server Group even if all the servers in two sites fail.</p>
Policy & Charging SBR Server Group Redundancy	<p>The Policy and Charging application will use SBR Server Groups to store the application data. The SBR Server Groups will support both Two and Three Site Redundancy. The Server Group Function name is “Policy & Charging SBR”.</p>
Server Group Primary Site	<p>A Server Group Primary Site is a term used to represent the principle location within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites(Places). For the Policy & Charging DRA application, these Sites(Places) are all configured within a single “Policy and Charging Mated Sites” Place Association.</p> <p>The Primary Site may be in a different Site(Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group .</p> <p>A Primary Site is described as the location in which the Active and Standby servers to reside, however there cannot be any Preferred Spare servers within this location. All SOAM and SBR Server Groups will have a Primary Site.</p>

<p>Server Group Secondary Site</p>	<p>A Server Group Secondary Site is a term used to represent location in addition to the Primary Site within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites(Places). For the Policy & Charging DRA application, these Sites(Places) are all configured within a single “Policy and Charging Mated Sites” Place Association.</p> <p>The Secondary Site may be in a different Site(Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group .</p> <p>A Secondary Site is described as the location in which only Preferred Spare servers reside. The Active and Standby servers cannot reside within this location. If Two or Three Site Redundancy is wanted, a Secondary Site is required for all SOAM and SBR Server Groups.</p>
<p>Server Group Tertiary Site</p>	<p>A Server Group Tertiary Site is a term used to represent location in addition to the Primary & Secondary Sites within a SOAM or SBR Server Group. SOAM and SBR Server groups are intended to span several Sites(Places). For the Policy & Charging DRA application, these Sites(Places) are all configured within a single “Policy and Charging Mated Sites” Place Association.</p> <p>The Tertiary Site may be in a different Site(Place) for each configured SOAM or SBR Server Group .</p> <p>A Tertiary Site is described as the location in which only Preferred Spare servers reside. The Active and Standby servers cannot reside within this location. A Tertiary Site only applies if Three Site Redundancy is wanted for SOAM and SBR Server Groups.</p>
<p>Software Centric</p>	<p>The business practice of delivering an Oracle software product, while relying upon the customer to procure the requisite hardware components. Oracle provides the hardware specifications, but does not provide the hardware, and is not responsible for hardware installation, configuration, or maintenance.</p>
<p>Enablement</p>	<p>The business practice of providing support services (hardware, software, documentation, etc) that enable a 3rd party entity to install, configuration, and maintain Oracle products for Oracle customers.</p>

2.0 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

This document defines the steps to execute the initial installation of the Diameter Signaling Router (DSR) 7.0/7.1 application on new HP C-Class Hardware.

DSR 7.0/7.1 installation paths are shown in the figures below. The general timeline for all processes to perform a software installation/configuration and upgrade is also included below.

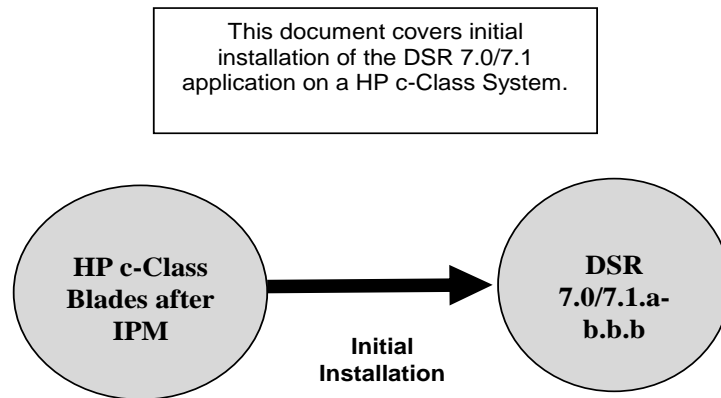


Figure 2 Example of Initial Application Installation Path

3.0 INSTALL OVERVIEW

This section provides a brief overview of the recommended method for installing DSR software that is on an HP c-Class system. The basic install process and approximate time required is outlined in **Figure 4**.

3.1 Required Materials

1. One (1) target release Application Media, or a target-release ISO
2. One (1) ISO of TPD release, or later shipping baseline as per Oracle ECO

3.2 Installation Overview

This section describes the overall strategy to be employed for a single or multi-site DSR 7.0/7.1 installation. It also lists the procedures required for installation with estimated times. **Section 3.2.1** discusses the overall install strategy and includes an installation flow chart that can be used to determine exactly which procedures should be run for an installation. **Section 3.2.2** lists the steps required to install a DSR 7.0/7.1 system. These latter sections expand on the information from the matrix and provide a general timeline for the installation.

3.2.1 Installation Strategy

A successful installation of DSR requires careful planning and assessment of all configuration materials and installation variables. Once a site survey has been conducted with the customer, the installer should use this section to map out the exact procedure list that will be executed at each site.

Figure 3 illustrates the overall process that each DSR installation will involve. In summary:

- 1) An overall installation requirement is decided upon. Among the data that should be collected:
 - The total number of sites
 - The number of servers at each site and their role(s)
 - Does DSR's networking interface terminate on a Layer 2 or Layer 3 boundary?
 - Number of enclosures at each site -- if any at all.
 - Will NOAMs use rack-mount servers or server blades?
 - (Per Site) Will MP's be in N+0 configurations or in active/standby?
 - What time zone should be used across the entire collection of DSR sites?
 - Will SNMP traps be viewed at the NOAM, or will an external NMS be used? (Or both?)
- 2) A site survey (NAPD) is conducted with the customer to determine exact networking and site details. **Note:** XMI and IMI addresses are difficult to change once configured. It is very important that these addresses are well planned and not expected to change after a site is installed.
- 3) For each SOAM /MP/DR-NOAM only site (i.e. sites NOT containing the main NOAM server), the installer will execute the procedures in document [3] (For DSR 7.0) and [26] (For DSR 7.1) to set up the PMAC, HP enclosures, and switches. Then, using the procedures in this document, all servers will be IPM-ed with the proper TPD and DSR application ISO image. **Figure 4** details the exact procedures that are to be executed for the 2nd part of this install. When this is complete, all non-NOAM sites will be reachable through the network and ready for further installation when the primary NOAM site is brought up.
- 4) The installer will then move to the "main" site that will contain the primary NOAM. Again, [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) will be executed for this site. Then, moving on to the procedures in this document, **Figure 4** is consulted to determine the procedure list. During this install, the user will "bring up" the other sub-sites (if they exist) that were configured in step 3. For single sites where the NOAM/SOAM/MPs are all located together, then step 3 is skipped and the entire install is covered by this step.
- 5) Once the primary NOAM site has been installed according to [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) and this document, then full DSR installation is complete.

Note: An alternative install strategy will swap steps 3 & 4. The main NOAM site is installed first, and then the sub-sites (DR-NOAM, SOAM/MP only) are installed and brought up on the NOAM as they are configured. This approach is perfectly valid, but is not reflected in the flow-charts/diagrams shown here.

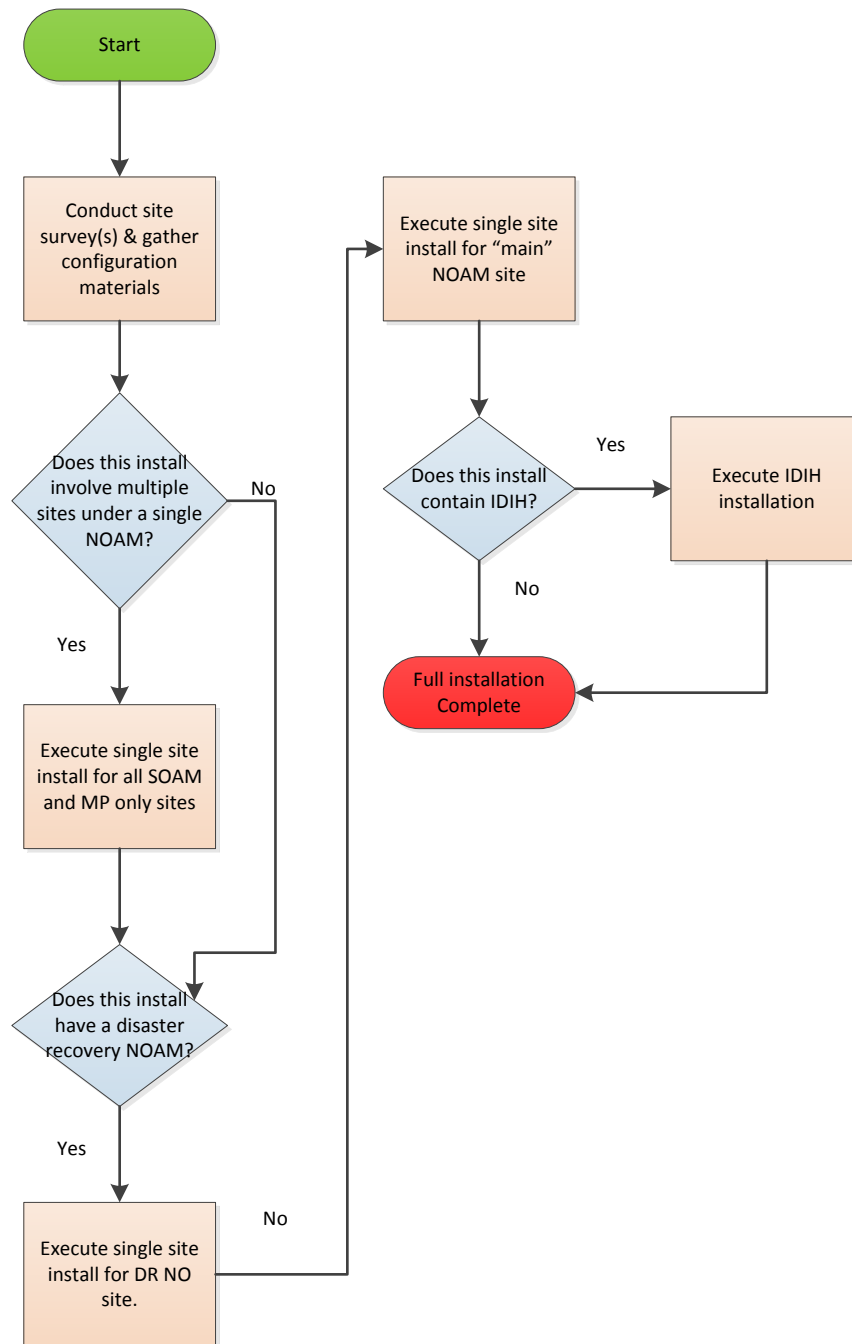


Figure 3 DSR Installation: High Level Sequence

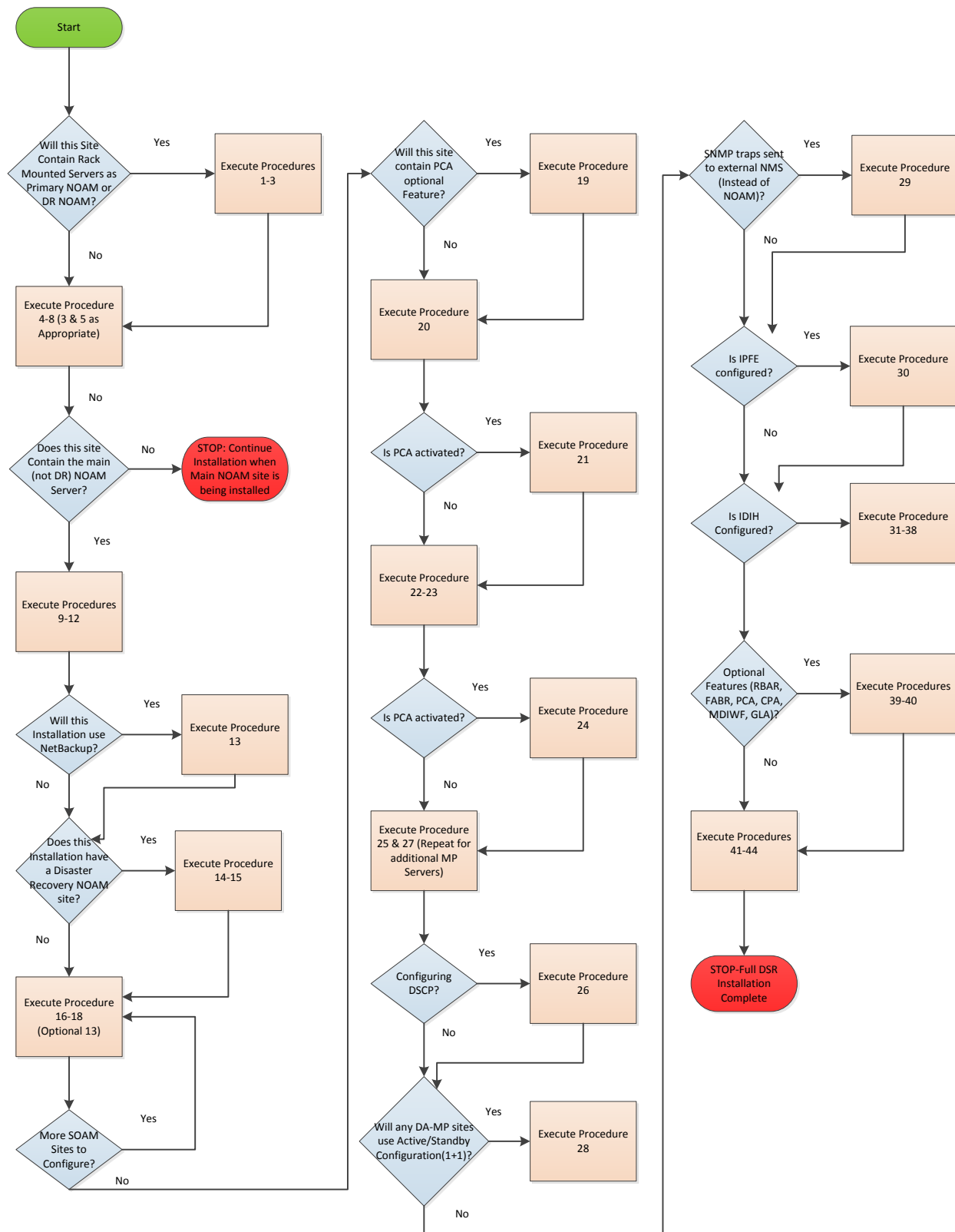


Figure 4 DSR Single Site Installation Procedure Map

3.2.2 SNMP Configuration

The network-wide plan for SNMP configuration should be decided upon before DSR installation proceeds. This section provides some recommendations for these decisions.

SNMP traps can originate from the following entities in a DSR installation:

- DSR Application Servers (NOAM, SOAM, MPs of all types)
- DSR Auxiliary Components (OA, Switches, TVOE hosts, PMAC)

DSR application servers can be configured to:

1. Send all their SNMP traps to the NOAM via merging from their local SOAM. All traps will terminate at the NOAM and be viewable from the NOAM GUI (entire network) and the SOAM GUI (site specific). Traps are displayed on the GUI both as alarms and logged in trap history. This is the default configuration option and no changes are required for this to take effect.
2. Send all their SNMP traps to an external Network Management Station (NMS). The traps will be seen at the SOAM AND/OR NOAM as alarms AND they will be viewable at the configured NMS(s) as traps.

Application server SNMP configuration is done from the NOAM GUI, near the end of DSR installation. See the procedure list for details.

DSR auxiliary components must have their SNMP trap destinations set explicitly. Trap destinations can be the NOAM VIP, the SOAMP VIP, or an external (customer) NMS. The recommended configuration is as follows:

The following components:

- PMAC (TVOE)
- PMAC (App)
- OAs
- All Switch types (4948, 3020, 6120.6125G)
- TVOE for DSR Servers

Should have their SNMP trap destinations set to:

1. The local SOAM VIP
2. The customer NMS, if available

3.2.3 Installation Procedures

The following table illustrates the progression of the installation process by procedure with estimated times. The estimated times and the phases that must be completed may vary due to differences in typing ability and system configuration. The phases outlined in are to be executed in the order they are listed.

TABLE 2 INSTALLATION OVERVIEW

Procedure	Phase	Elapsed Time (Minutes)	
		This Step	Cum.
Procedure 1	Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS Server	15	15
Procedure 2	Configure TVOE on Additional RMS Server(s)	20	35
Procedure 3	Configure TVOE on Server Blades	20	55
Procedure 4	Load Application and TPD ISO onto PM&C Server	5	60
Procedure 5	Create NOAM Guest VMs	5	65
Procedure 6	Create SOAM Guest VMs	5	70
Procedure 7	IPM blades	20	90
Procedure 8	Install the application software on the blades	20	110
Procedure 9	Configure the First NOAM Server	25	135
Procedure 10	Configure the NO AM Server Group	15	150
Procedure 11	Configure the Second NOAM Server	15	165
Procedure 12	Complete Configuring the NOAM Server Group	10	175
Procedure 13	Install NetBackup Client on NOAM Servers*	10	185
Procedure 14	NOAM Configuration for DR Site*	10	195
Procedure 15	NOAM Pairing for DSR NO DR Site*	10	205
Procedure 16	Configure the SOAM Network Element	15	220
Procedure 17	Configure the SOAM Servers	10	230
Procedure 18	Configure the SOAM Server Group	10	240
Procedure 19	Activate PCA (PCA Only)*	10	250
Procedure 20	Configure the MP Blade Servers	5	255
Procedure 21	Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA Only)*	10	265
Procedure 22	Configure the MP Server Groups	10	275
Procedure 23	Configure the Signaling Network	30	305
Procedure 24	Additional Services to Network Mapping (PCA Only)*	10	315
Procedure 25	Configure the Signaling Devices	10	325
Procedure 26	Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic*	10	335
Procedure 27	Configure the Signaling Network Routes	15	350
Procedure 28	Add VIP for Signaling Networks*	5	355
Procedure 29	Configure SNMP for Traps Receivers*	5	360
Procedure 30	IP Front End Configuration*	15	405
Procedure 31	IDIH Installation*	60	465
Procedure 32	IDIH Configuration-Data Synchronzation*	15	480
Procedure 33	IDIH Configuration-SSO Domain*	30	510

Procedure 34	IDIH Configuration-DSR Configuration*	20	530
Procedure 35	IDIH Configuration-Mail Server*	20	550
Procedure 36	IDIH Configuration-SNMP Management Server*	20	570
Procedure 37	IDIH Configuration- Change Network Interface*	20	590
Procedure 38	IDIH Configuration- Generate Disaster Recovery FDC File*		
Procedure 39	Activate Optional Features*	30	620
Procedure 40	Configure ComAgent Connections*	20	640
Procedure 41	Backup TVOE Configuration*	20	660
Procedure 42	Backup PMAC Application*	20	680
Procedure 43	Backup NOAM Database*	20	700
Procedure 44	Backup SOAM Database*	20	720

* denotes Optional Features.

3.2 Optional Features

When DSR installation is complete, further configuration and/or installation steps will need to be taken for optional features that may be present in this deployment. Please refer to these documents for the post-DSR install configuration steps needed for their components.

TABLE 3 OPTIONAL FEATURES

Feature	Document
Diameter Mediation	DSR Meta Administration Feature Activation Procedure, E58661
Charging Proxy Application (CPA)	DSR CPA Feature Activation Procedure, E58663
Full Address Based Resolution (FABR)	DSR FABR Feature Activation Procedure, E58664
Range Based Address Resolution (RBAR)	DSR RBAR Feature Activation Procedure, E58665
Map-Diameter Interworking (MAP-IWF)	DSR MAP-Diameter IWF Feature Activation Procedure, E58666
Policy and Charging Application (PCA)	DSR 7.0 PCA Activation and Configuration Procedure, E58667 DSR 7.1 PCA Activation and Configuration Procedure, E63560
Gateway Location Application (GLA)	DSR GLA Feature Activation Procedure, E58659

4.0 SOFTWARE INSTALLATION PROCEDURE

As mentioned earlier, the hardware installation and network cabling should be done before executing the procedures in this document. It is assumed that at this point, the user has access to:

- ILO consoles of all server blades at all sites
- ssh access to the PMAC servers at all sites
- GUI access to PMAC servers at all sites
- A configuration station with a web browser, ssh client, and scp client.

SUDO

As a non-root user (***admusr***), many commands (*when run as admusr*) now require the use of '**sudo**'.

IPv6

IPv6 configuration of XMI and IMI networks has been introduced in DSR 7.1. Standard IPv6 formats for IPv6 and prefix can be used in all IP configuration screens which enable the DSR to be run in an IPv6 only environment. When using IPv6 for XMI and management, you must place the IPv6 address in brackets (highlighted in red below), example as followed:

`https:// [<IPv6 address>]`

If a dual-stack (IPv4 & IPv6) network is required, it is recommended that you first configure the topology, and then "Migrate" to IPv6. Reference [24] for instructions on how to accomplish this migration.

4.1 Configure RMS TVOE Hosts

Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will extend the TVOE networking configuration on the First RMS server in preparation for the installation of the NOAM VM on that RMS.</p> <p>Note: If a NOAM VM will NOT be co-located with the PMAC VM on the First RMS (for instance, this server will only run PMAC, but there are 2 additional RMS which will not), then skip this procedure and continue with the next procedure.</p> <p>Prerequisite: TVOE and PMAC (virtualized) have been installed on the First RMS Server as described in [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
----------------------------------	--

Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Determine Bridge names and interfaces for XMI and IMI, and Netbackup (if used) networks.	<p>Determine the bridge names and physical bridge interfaces to be used on the TVOE server for the NOAM XMI and IMI networks. Based on the site survey, you will need to determine if you are using VLAN tagging or not, what bonds will be used, and also the actual Ethernet interfaces that will make up those bonds.</p> <p>If the netbackup bridge and interface were not previously configured on this server when PMAC was installed, determine those values as well.</p> <p>Fill in the appropriate values in the table below:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NOAM Guest Interface Name</th><th>TVOE Bridge Name</th><th>TVOE Bridge Interface</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>xmi</td><td>xmi</td><td> Interface Bond (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Interface Name (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100): <div></div> <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> </td></tr> <tr> <td>imi</td><td>imi</td><td> Interface Bond:(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Interface Name: (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100) <div></div> <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface </td></tr> <tr> <td>netbackup</td><td>netbackup</td><td> : Interface Name (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface> </td></tr> </tbody> </table>	NOAM Guest Interface Name	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface	xmi	xmi	Interface Bond (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Interface Name (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100): <div></div> <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface>	imi	imi	Interface Bond: (e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Interface Name: (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100) <div></div> <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface	netbackup	netbackup	: Interface Name (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface>
NOAM Guest Interface Name	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface												
xmi	xmi	Interface Bond (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Interface Name (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100): <div></div> <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface>												
imi	imi	Interface Bond: (e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Interface Name: (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100) <div></div> <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface												
netbackup	netbackup	: Interface Name (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc) <div></div> <TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface>												
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	First RMS Server: Login to the TVOE prompt	Log in to the TVOE prompt of the first RMS server as the admusr user (the one running the PMAC). Use either the iLO facility or the TVOE's IP address on the management network.												

Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>First RMS Server: Configure XMI Bridge Interface Bond</p>	<p>Verify the xmi bridge interface bond by running the following command:</p> <p>Note: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the control bridge configured.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm query --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Protocol: none On Boot: yes Persistent: yes Bonded Mode: active-backup Enslaving: eth01 eth02</pre> <p>If the bond has already been configured you will see output similar to what you see above. If this is so, skip to the next step. Otherwise, continue with this step.</p> <p>Create bonding interface and associate subordinate interfaces with bond:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100 Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond> added \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1> updated \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2> updated \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/syscheckAdm net ipbond --set --var=DEVICES -- val=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond>, [bondX, bondX+1, ..., bondN]</pre> <p>Note: All other existing bonds should be included in the 'val=' statement. E.g. if TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond = bond1, val=bond0,bond1</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond -enable</pre>
--	---	---

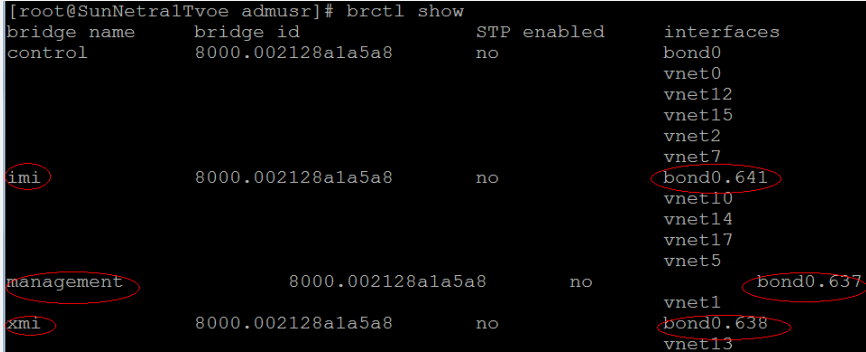
Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

4 <input type="checkbox"/>	First RMS Server: Create XMI Bridge Interface, If needed. (Only for VLAN tagging interfaces)	<p>If you are using VLAN tagging for the XMI bridge interface, then you must create the VLAN interface first. Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> created.</pre>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	First RMS Server: Create XMI Bridge	<p>Now , create the XMI bridge:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge -- name=xmi --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> Interface <TOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> updated. Bridge xmi created.</pre>

Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>First RMS Server: Configure IMI Bridge Interface Bond</p>	<p>Verify the imi bridge interface bond by running the following command:</p> <p>Note: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the IMI bridge configured.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm query --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Protocol: none On Boot: yes Persistent: yes Bonded Mode: active-backup Enslaving: eth01 eth02</pre> <p>If the bond has already been configured you will see output similar to what you see above. If this is so, skip to the next step. Otherwise, continue with this step.</p> <p>Create bonding interface and associate subordinate interfaces with bond:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100 Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond> added \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1> updated \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2> updated</pre> <p>Execute the following 2 commands ONLY IF <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond> is different from <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond></p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond --set --var=DEVICES --val=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond>, <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond>,[other bonds...]</pre> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond -enable</pre>
--	---	---

Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>First RMS Server: Create IMI Bridge Interface</p>	<p>If you are using VLAN tagging for the IMI bridge interface, then you must create the VLAN interface first. Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface> --onboot=yes</pre> <p>Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface> created.</p>
<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>First RMS Server: Create IMI Bridge</p>	<p>Create the IMI bridge:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge -- name=imi --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface></pre> <p>Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface> updated. Bridge imi created.</p>
<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>First RMS Server: Verify bridge creation status</p>	<p>Verify that the XMI and IMI bridges have been created successfully (Example output for illustrative purposes only):</p> <pre>\$ brctl show</pre>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify that "imi" and "xmi" are listed under the bridge name column. • Verify that <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> is listed under the interfaces column for xmi. • Verify that <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface> is listed under the interfaces column for imi. • Verify that the <TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface> is listed under the interface column for <TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface> <p>Note: For this server, <TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface> was created in part #1 of the install procedure - [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)</p>

Procedure 1 Continue TVOE Configuration on First RMS

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	First RMS Server: Create Netbackup bridge (Optional)	<p>Perform the following command if you will have a dedicated Netbackup interface within your NOAM guests (and if the Netbackup bridge was NOT configured when setting up the PMAC earlier)</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=Netbackup --onboot=yes --MTU=<NetBackup_MTU_size> --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface></pre>
--------------------------------	--	--

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

STEP #	<p>This procedure will configure TVOE networking on rack mount servers other than the first one which has already been installed and is running PMAC.</p> <p>Note: You will repeat this procedure for each additional RMS you wish to configure TVOE for.</p> <p>Prerequisite: Rack mount server has been IPM'ed with TVOE OS as described in [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
---------------	---

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

1	<p>Determine Bridge names and interfaces for XMI and IMI, and Netbackup (if used) networks.</p>	<p>Determine the bridge names and physical bridge interfaces to be used on the TVOE server for the NOAM XMI and IMI networks. Based on the site survey, you will need to determine if you are using VLAN tagging or not, what bonds will be used, and also the actual Ethernet interfaces that will make up those bonds.</p> <p>If the netbackup bridge and interface were not previously configured on this server when PMAC was installed, determine those values as well.</p> <p>Fill in the appropriate values in the table below:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>NOAM Guest Interface Name</th> <th>TVOE Bridge Name</th> <th>TVOE Bridge Interface</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>xmi</td> <td>xmi</td> <td> <p>Interface Bond (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond></p> <p>Interface Name (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface></p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>imi</td> <td>imi</td> <td> <p>Interface Bond:(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond></p> <p>Interface Name: (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface</p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>netbackup</td> <td>netbackup</td> <td> <p>: Interface Name (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface></p> </td> </tr> <tr> <td>management</td> <td>managem ent</td> <td> <p>Interface Name (e.g. bond0.2, bond0.37, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface></p> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	NOAM Guest Interface Name	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface	xmi	xmi	<p>Interface Bond (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond></p> <p>Interface Name (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface></p>	imi	imi	<p>Interface Bond:(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond></p> <p>Interface Name: (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface</p>	netbackup	netbackup	<p>: Interface Name (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface></p>	management	managem ent	<p>Interface Name (e.g. bond0.2, bond0.37, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface></p>
NOAM Guest Interface Name	TVOE Bridge Name	TVOE Bridge Interface															
xmi	xmi	<p>Interface Bond (e.g- bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond></p> <p>Interface Name (e.g. - bond0.3, bond1, bond0.100):</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface></p>															
imi	imi	<p>Interface Bond:(e.g. - bond0, bond1, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond></p> <p>Interface Name: (e.g. - bond0.4, bond1, bond0.100)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface</p>															
netbackup	netbackup	<p>: Interface Name (e.g. - eth11, eth04, eth03, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface></p>															
management	managem ent	<p>Interface Name (e.g. bond0.2, bond0.37, etc)</p> <p>_____</p> <p><TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface></p>															

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server: Login	Log in to the TVOE prompt of the RMS Server as admusr using the iLO facility.
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server iLO: Modify control bridge if using tagged control interface (Optional)	<p>If you are using VLAN tagging for your control interface, you must reconfigure the default control bridge configuration. Otherwise, skip this step and proceed to the next step.</p> <div> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=control --delBridgeInt=bond0 -onboot=yes</pre> <p>Bridge control updated.</p> </div> <div> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=bond0.<Control_VLAN_ID> --onboot=yes</pre> <p>Interface bond0.X added</p> </div> <div> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=control --addBridgeInt=bond0.<Control_VLAN_ID></pre> <p>Bridge control updated.</p> </div>

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>RMS Server: Configure XMI Bridge Interface Bond</p>	<p>Verify the xmi bridge interface bond by running the following command:</p> <p>Note: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the control bridge configured.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm query --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> Protocol: none On Boot: yes Persistent: yes Bonded Mode: active-backup Enslaving: eth01 eth02</pre> <p>If the bond has already been configured you will see output similar to what you see above. If this is so, skip to the next step. Otherwise, continue with this step.</p> <p>Create bonding interface and associate subordinate interfaces with bond:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100 Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond> added \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1> updated \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2> updated \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/syscheckAdm net ipbond --set --var=DEVICES -- val=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond>, [bondX,bondX+1, ...,bondN]</pre> <p>Note: All other existing bonds should be included in the 'val=' statement. E.g. if TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond = bond1, val=bond0,bond1</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond -enable</pre>
--	---	---

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

4 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server: Create XMI Bridge Interface, If needed. (Only for VLAN tagging interfaces)	<p>If you are using VLAN tagging for the XMI bridge interface, then you must create the VLAN interface first. Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> --onboot=yes Interface <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> created.</pre>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server: Create XMI Bridge	<p>Now , create the XMI bridge:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge -- name=xmi --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> Interface <TOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> updated. Bridge xmi created.</pre>

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>RMS Server: Configure IMI Bridge Interface Bond</p>	<p>Verify the imi bridge interface bond by running the following command:</p> <p>Note: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The example output below shows the control bridge configured.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm query --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond></pre> <pre>Protocol: none On Boot: yes Persistent: yes Bonded Mode: active-backup Enslaving: eth01 eth02</pre> <p>If the bond has already been configured you will see output similar to what you see above. If this is so, skip to the next step. Otherwise, continue with this step.</p> <p>Create bonding interface and associate subordinate interfaces with bond:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100</pre> <pre>Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond> added</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes</pre> <pre>Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet1> updated</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes</pre> <pre>Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond_Ethernet2> updated</pre> <p>Execute the following 2 commands ONLY IF <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Bond> is different from <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Bond></p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond --set --var=DEVICES --val=<TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond>, <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface_Bond>,[other bonds...]</pre> <pre>\$ sudo syscheckAdm net ipbond -enable</pre>
--	---	---

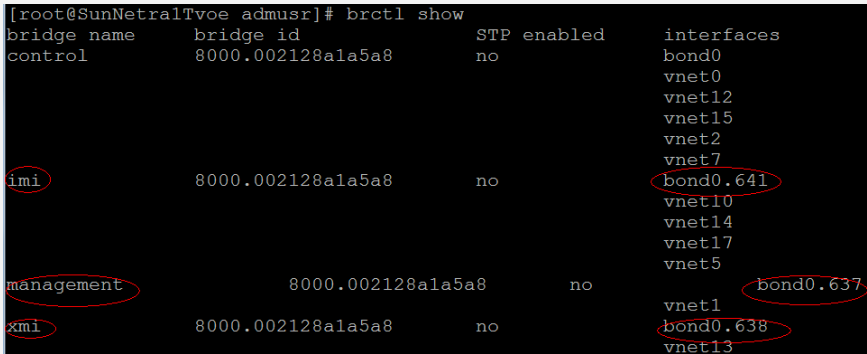
Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

7 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server: Create IMI Bridge Interface	<p>If you are using VLAN tagging for the IMI bridge interface, then you must create the VLAN interface first. Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface> --onboot=yes</pre> <p>Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface> created.</p>
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server: Create IMI Bridge	<p>Create the IMI bridge:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge -- name=imi --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface></pre> <p>Interface <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface> updated. Bridge imi created.</p>

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>RMS server iLO: Create management bridge and assign TVOE Management IP</p>	<p>Note: The output below is for illustrative purposes only. The site information for this system will determine the network interfaces, (<i>network devices, bonds, and bond enslaved devices</i>), to configure.</p> <p>If <TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> or the bond it is based on (if using tagged interface) has not yet been created, then execute the next 3 commands. Otherwise, skip to the “EXAMPLE...” section:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --onboot=yes --type=Bonding --mode=active-backup --miimon=100 Interface <TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> added</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Bond_Interface1> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <mgmt_ethernet_interface1> updated</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Bond_Interface2> --type=Ethernet --master=<TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface_Bond> --slave=yes --onboot=yes Interface <mgmt_ethernet_interface2> updated</pre> <p>EXAMPLE 1: Create Management bridge using untagged interfaces</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=management --bootproto=none --onboot=yes --address=<TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address> --netmask=<TVOE_Mgmt_Netmask/Prefix> --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface></pre> <p>EXAMPLE 2: Create Management bridge using tagged interfaces</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --device=<TVOE_Management_Bridge_Interface> \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=management --address=<TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address> --netmask=<TVOE_Mgmt_Netmask/Prefix> --onboot=yes --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface></pre>
--	--	--

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS server iLO: Add default route	<p>Create default route (execute regardless of which example is chosen):</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=default --gateway=<TVOE_Mgmt_gateway_IP_address> --device=management Route to management created.</pre>
11 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server: Verify bridge creation status	<p>Verify that the XMI and IMI bridges have been created successfully (Example output for illustrative purposes only):</p> <pre>\$ brctl show</pre>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Verify that "imi" and "xmi" are listed under the bridge name column. • Verify that <TVOE_XMI_Bridge_Interface> is listed under the interfaces column for xmi. • Verify that <TVOE_IMI_Bridge_Interface> is listed under the interfaces column for imi. • Verify that the <TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface> is listed under the interface column for <TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface> <p>Note: For this server, <TVOE_Mgmt_Bridge_Interface> was created in part #1 of the install procedure - [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)</p>
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server iLO: Create Netbackup bridge (Optional)	<pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=NetBackup --onboot=yes --MTU=<NetBackup_MTU_size> --bridgeInterfaces=<TVOE_NetBackup_Bridge_Interface></pre>

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

13 **RMS Server**
iLO: Set
Hostname

```
$ sudo su - platcfg
```

```
Platform Configuration Utility 3.05 (C) 2003 - 2011 Tekelec, Inc.  
Hostname: hostname1322587482
```

```
Main Menu  
Maintenance  
Diagnostics  
Server Configuration  
Network Configuration  
Exit
```

Use arrow keys to move between options | <Enter> selects | <F12> Main Menu

Navigate to **Sever Configuration->Hostname-> Edit** and enter a new hostname for your server:

```
Edit Hostname  
Hostname: dsrTVOE-blade11  
OK Cancel
```

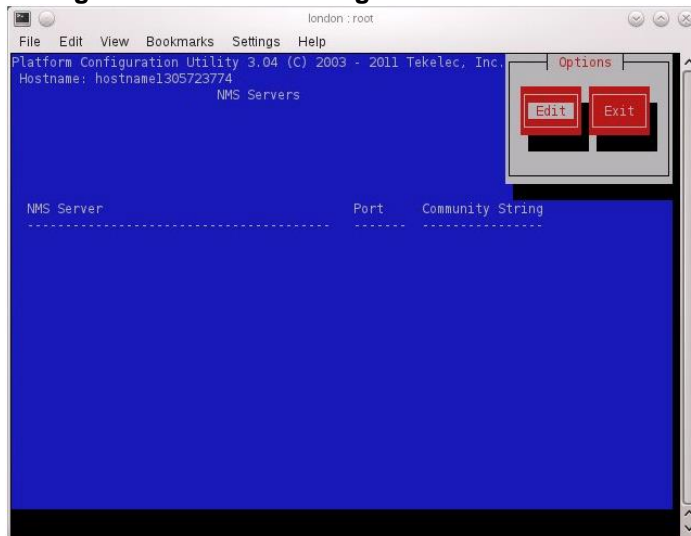
Press **OK** and select and continue to press Exit until you are at the platcfg main menu again.

Note: Although the new hostname has been properly configured and committed at this point, it will not appear on your command prompt unless you log out and log back in again.

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

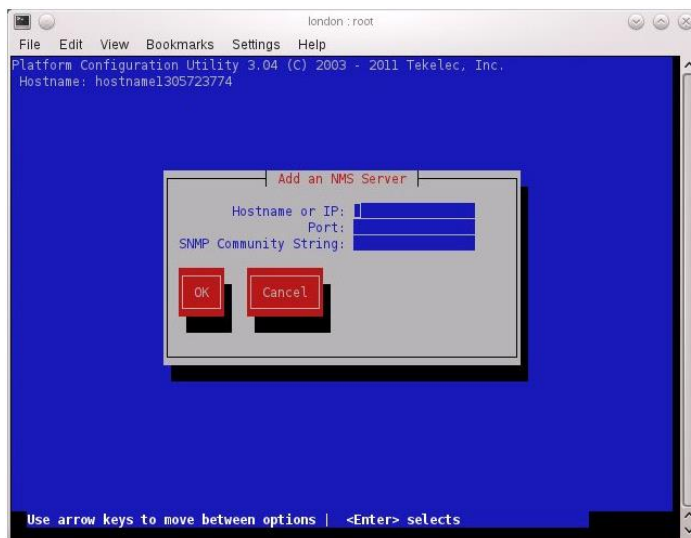
14 **RMS Server iLO: Configure SNMP**

From the platcfg main menu, navigate to **Network Configuration -> SNMP Configuration -> NMS Configuration**



Press **Edit**.

Choose **Add a New NMS Server**



Enter the following NMS servers, pressing **OK** after each one and then selecting the **Add NMS** option again:

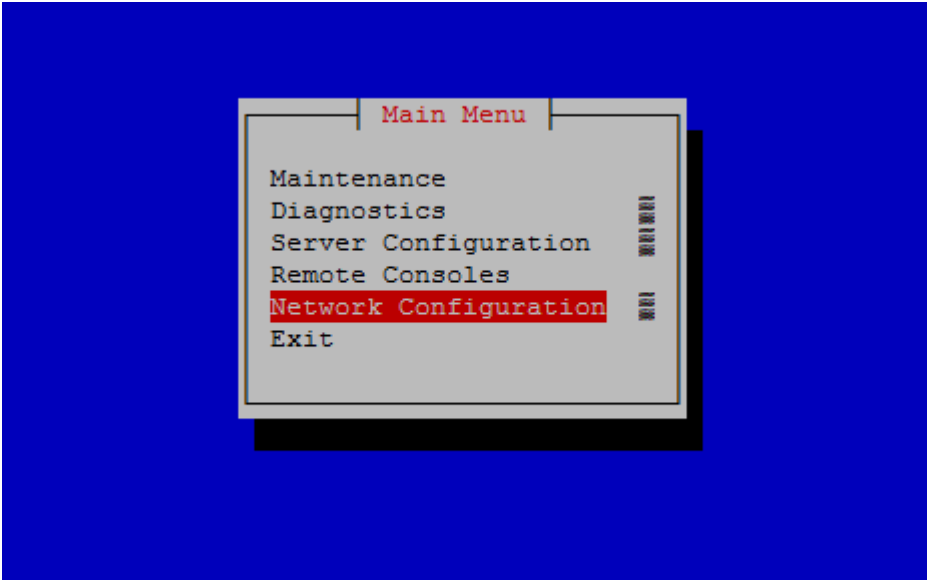
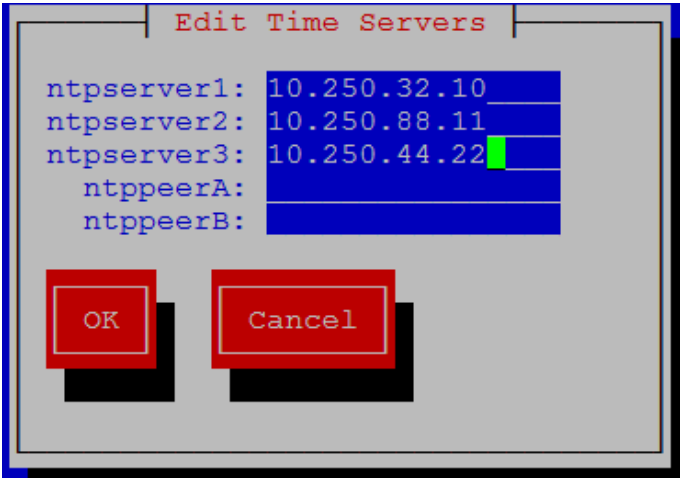
1. Enter the Hostname/IP of the Customer NMS Server, for port enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document.
2. Enter the IP of the NOAM VIP, for port enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document

Press **Exit**.

Select **Yes** when prompted to restart the Alarm Routing Service.

Once Done, press **Exit** to quit to the platcfg main menu.

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

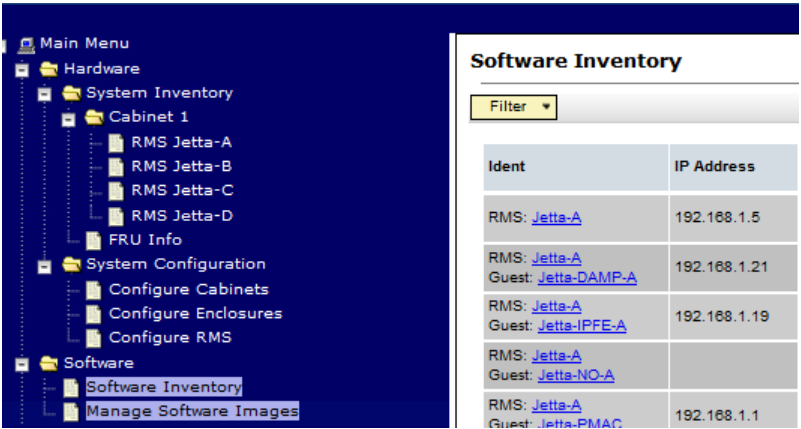
15	RMS Server iLO: Configure NTP	<p>Navigate to Network Configuration</p>  <p>The screenshot shows a 'Main Menu' window with a list of options: Maintenance, Diagnostics, Server Configuration, Remote Consoles, Network Configuration (highlighted in red), and Exit. The background is blue.</p> <p>Navigate to NTP Click Edit</p>  <p>The screenshot shows an 'Edit Time Servers' window with input fields for ntpserver1, ntpserver2, ntpserver3, ntppeerA, and ntppeerB. The ntpserver3 field contains the IP address 10.250.44.22. There are OK and Cancel buttons at the bottom.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• ntpserver1: Enter customer provided NTP server #1 IP address.• ntpserver2: Enter customer provided NTP server #2 IP address.• ntpserver3: Enter customer provided NTP server #3 IP address. <p>Press OK Press Exit to return to the platcfg menu.</p>
----	--	---

Procedure 2 Configure TVOE on Additional RMS(s)

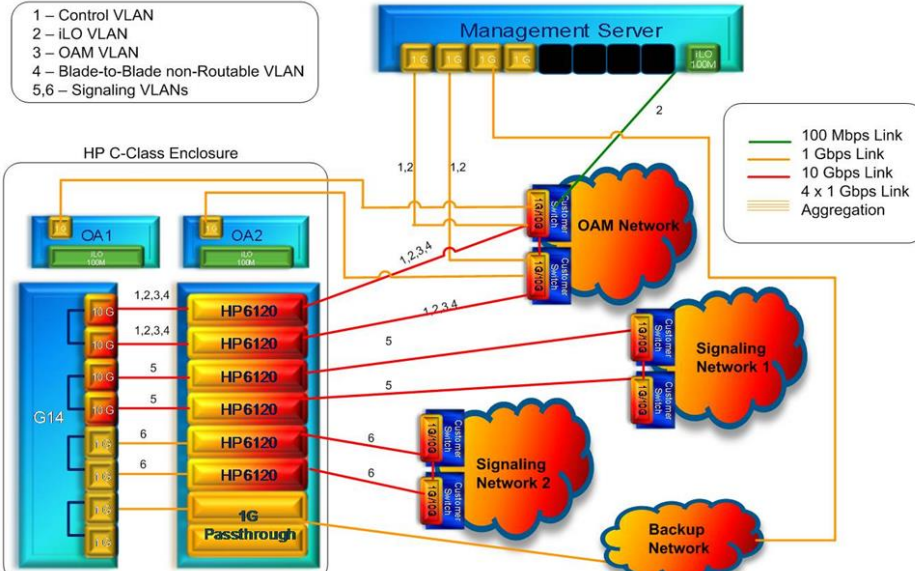
16 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server iLO: Configure Time Zone	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-bottom: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> </div> <p>Navigate to Server Configuration->Time Zone</p> <div> </div> <div> </div> <p>If the time zone displayed matches the time zone you desire, then you can continue to hit Exit until you are out of the platcfg program. If you want a different time zone, then proceed with this instruction.</p> <p>Click Edit</p> <div> </div> <p>Select the desired time zone from the list and press Enter Continue pressing Exit until you are out of the platcfg program.</p>
17 <input type="checkbox"/>	RMS Server iLO: Reboot Server	Reboot the server by executing the following command: <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> </div>

4.2 Configure Blade TVOE Hosts

Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will configure TVOE on the server blades that will host DSR NOAM VMs. It details the configuration for a single server blade and should be repeated for every TVOE blade that was IPM-ed for this installed.</p> <p>NOTE: TVOE should only be installed on Blade servers that will run either as DSR SOAMs or DSR NOAMs. They should NOT be installed on Blade servers intended to run as DSR MPs.</p> <p>Prerequisite: TVOE OS has been installed on the target server blades as per instructions in [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PMAC Server: Exchange SSH keys between PMAC and TVOE server</p> <p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of TVOE server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to Main Menu -> Software -> Software Inventory.</p>  <p>Note the IP address TVOE server.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC, login as the admusr user.</p> <p>Exchange SSH keys between the PMAC and the TVOE server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the TVOE blade server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the TVOE server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@<TVOE_Control_Blade_IP_address></pre>

Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>TVOE Server: Login and Copy Configuration Scripts from PMAC</p>	<p>Login as admusr on the TVOE server using the ILO facility.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@<Mgmt_Server_Control_IP_address>:/usr/TKLC/smac/etc/TVOE* /usr/TKLC/</pre> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 777 /usr/TKLC/TVOE*</pre> <p>Note: If no TVOE configuration scripts are found here, then please re-execute section 4.2.2, Step #13 of [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1)</p>
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>TVOE Server: Mezzanine card/segregated OAM/XMI network configuration</p>	<p>If your TVOE server blade DOES have mezzanine cards AND you will be running OAM/XMI traffic on a separate physical network (<i>example below</i>). If you do not have mezzanine cards, skip this step.</p>  <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/TVOEcfig.sh --xmivlan=<XMI_VLAN_ID> --imivlan=<IMI_VLAN_ID> mezz</pre>

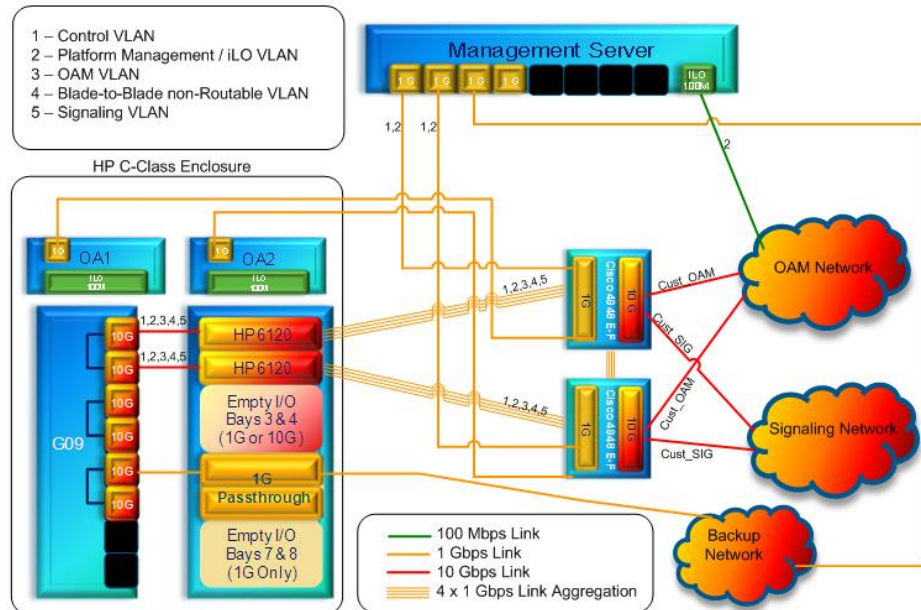
Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

4



TVOE Server:
No Mezzanine card/ No segregated OAM/XMI network configuration

If your TVOE server blade **DOES NOT** have mezzanine cards AND/OR you will NOT be running OAM/XMI traffic over a separate physical network (example below).



Execute the following command:

```
$ sudo /usr/TKLC/TVOEcfg.sh --xmivlan=<XMI_VLAN_ID>
--imivlan=<IMI_VLAN_ID>
```

Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>TVOE Server: Verify TVOE configuration</p>	<p>XMI_VLAN_ID is the VLAN ID for the XMI network in this installation, and IMI_VLAN_ID is the VLAN ID for the IMI network in this installation. For deployments with aggregation switches, the IMI and XMI VLAN IDs will be the values of the “INTERNAL-IMI” and “INTERNAL-XMI” VLAN ids, respectively. For layer-2 only deployments, the IMI and XMI VLAN ids will be obtained from the customer.</p> <p>Upon executing the proper version of the TVOEcfg.sh script, you should see an output similar to the following (example shows output without the “mezz” parameter):</p> <pre>Using onboard NICs ... Interface bond0.3 added Interface bond0.4 added Setting up the bridge and unsetting network info Interface bond0.3 was updated. Bridge xmi added! Setting up the bridge and unsetting network info Interface bond0.4 was updated. Bridge imi added!</pre> <p>The prompt will return.</p> <p>Note: If for any reason, you ran the wrong version of the TVOEcfg.sh command, you can execute the following command to reset the networking configuration so you can repeat either steps 3 or 4:</p> <pre>/usr/TKLC/TVOEclean.sh</pre>
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>TVOE Server: Configure XMI IP and Default Route</p>	<p>Configure IP address on the XMI network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --type=Bridge --name=xmi --address=<TVOE_XMI_IP_ADDRESS> --netmask=<TVOE_XMI_Netmask/Prefix> Interface xmi was updated.</pre> <p>Restart network services:</p> <pre>\$ sudo service network restart [wait for the prompt to return]</pre> <p>Set the default route:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=default --device=xmi --gateway=<TVOE_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address> Route to xmi added.</pre>

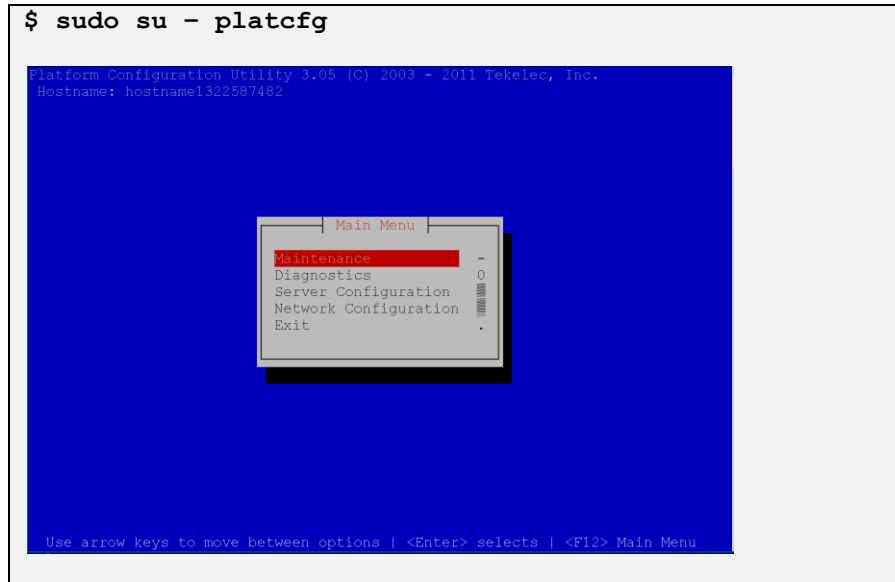
Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

7	<div>TVOE Server: Configure NetBackup Dedicated Interface and Bridge (Optional)</div>	<p>In these examples, <interface> should be replaced with the actual Ethernet interface that will be used as the dedicated NetBackup port. For instance, “eth01” or “eth22”.</p> <p>Un-bonded Ethernet Interface:</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<Ethernet interface> --slave=no --onboot=yes</pre></div> <p>[OPTIONAL] If this installation is using jumbo frames, set the Ethernet interface MTU to the desired jumbo frame size:</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=<Ethernet interface> --MTU=<NetBackup_MTU_size></pre></div> <p>Create NetBackup VM Bridge Interface:</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --type=Bridge --name=netbackup --bridgeInterfaces=<Ethernet interface> --onboot=yes</pre></div>
---	---	--

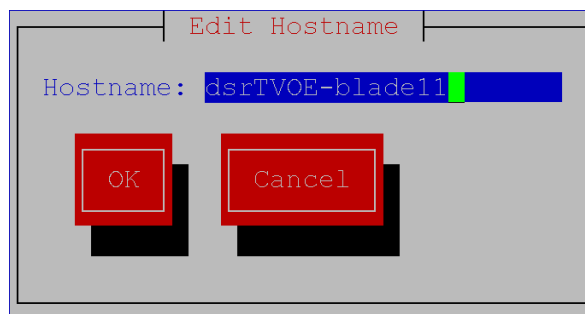
Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

8

TVOE
Server:
Set
Hostname



Navigate to **Sever Configuration->Hostname-> Edit** and enter a new hostname for your server:



Press **OK** and select and continue to press Exit until you are at the platcfg main menu again.

Note: Although the new hostname has been properly configured and committed at this point, it will not appear on your command prompt unless you log out and log back in again.

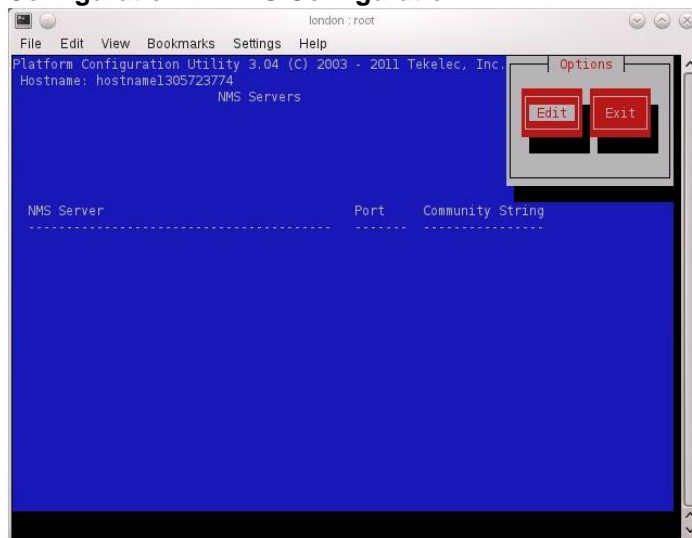
Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

9



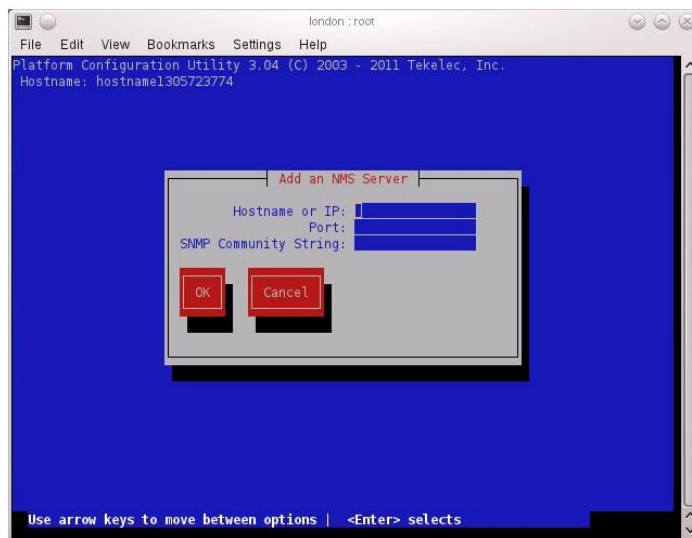
**TVOE
Server:
Configure
SNMP**

From the platcfg main menu, navigate to **Network Configuration -> SNMP Configuration -> NMS Configuration**



Press **Edit**.

Choose **Add a New NMS Server**



Enter the following NMS servers, pressing **OK** after each one and then selecting the **Add NMS** option again:

1. Enter the Hostname/IP of the Customer NMS Server, for port, enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document.
2. Enter the IP of the SOAM VIP, for port enter 162, and for Community String enter the community string provided in the customer NAPD Document

Press **Exit**.

Select **Yes** when prompted to restart the Alarm Routing Service.

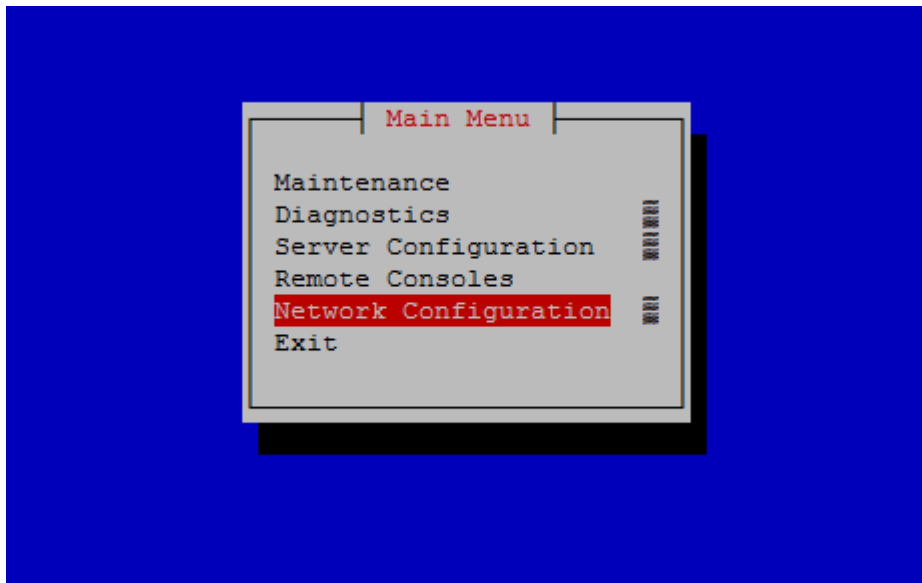
Once Done, press **Exit** to quit to the platcfg main menu.

Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

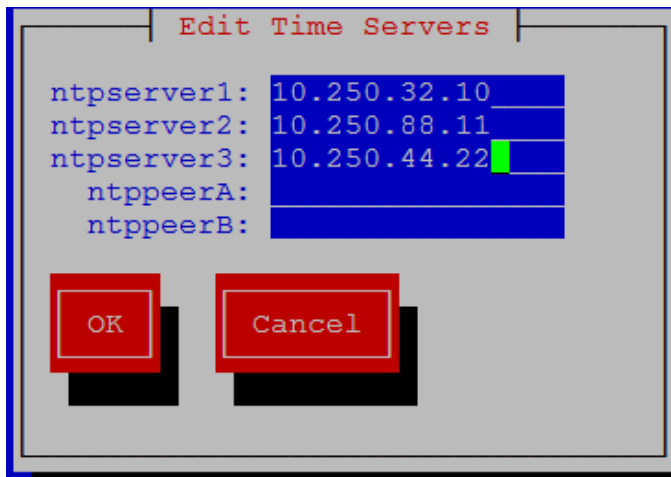
10

**TVOE
Server:**
Configure
NTP

Navigate to **Network Configuration**



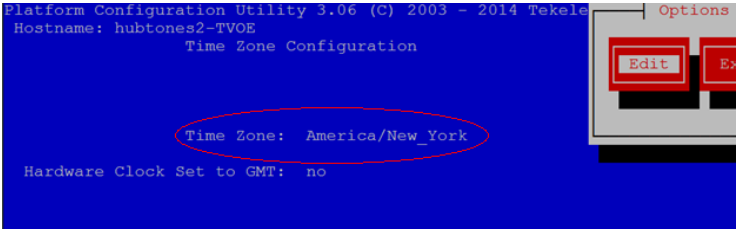
Navigate to **NTP**
Click **Edit**



- ntpserver1: Enter customer provided NTP server #1 IP address.
- ntpserver2: Enter customer provided NTP server #2 IP address.
- ntpserver3: Enter customer provided NTP server #3 IP address.

Press **OK**
Press **Exit** to return to the platcfg menu.

Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

11 <input type="checkbox"/>	TVOE Server: Configure Time Zone	<pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>Navigate to Server Configuration->Time Zone</p>   <p>If the time zone displayed matches the time zone you desire, then you can continue to hit Exit until you are out of the platcfg program. If you want a different time zone, then proceed with this instruction.</p> <p>Click Edit</p>  <p>Select the desired time zone from the list and press Enter Continue pressing Exit until you are out of the platcfg program.</p>
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	TVOE Server: Reboot	Reboot the server by executing the following command: <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

Procedure 3 Configure TVOE on Server Blades

13 <input type="checkbox"/>	TVOE server: Repeat Procedure for other TVOE blades.	Configuration of this TVOE server blade is complete. Repeat this procedure from the beginning for other TVOE hosts that need to be configured.
14 <input type="checkbox"/>	Install SDS (Optional)	If this deployment contains SDS, SDS can now be installed. Refer to document referenced in [8].

4.3 Create Virtual Machines for Applications


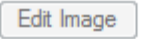
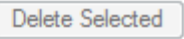
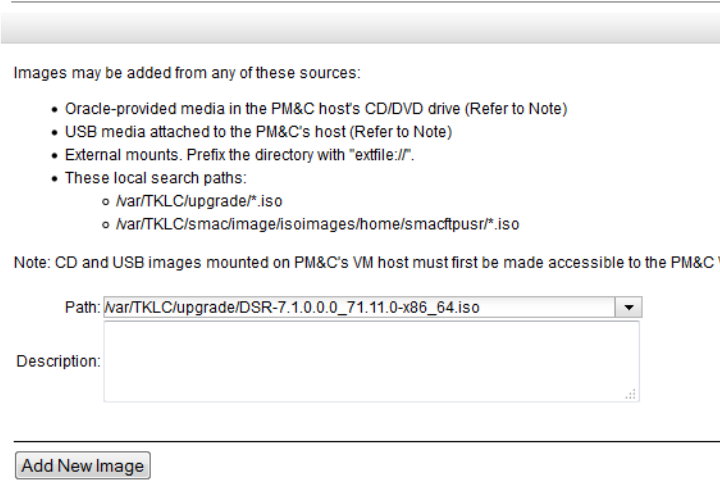
Procedure 4 Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will load the DSR Application and TPD ISO into the PM&C Server</p> <p>Needed material:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Application Media <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	TVOE Host: Load Application ISO	<p>Add the Application ISO image to the PM&C, this can be done in one of three ways:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Insert the Application CD required by the application into the removable media drive. 2. Attach the USB device containing the ISO image to a USB port. 3. Copy the Application iso file to the PM&C server into the “/var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr/” directory as pmacftpusr user: <p>cd into the directory where your ISO image is located on the TVOE Host (<i>not on the PM&C server</i>)</p> <p>Using sftp, connect to the PM&C server</p> <pre>\$ sftp pmacftpusr@<pmac_management_network_ip> \$ put <image>.iso</pre> <p>After the image transfer is 100% complete, close the connection:</p> <pre>\$ quit</pre>

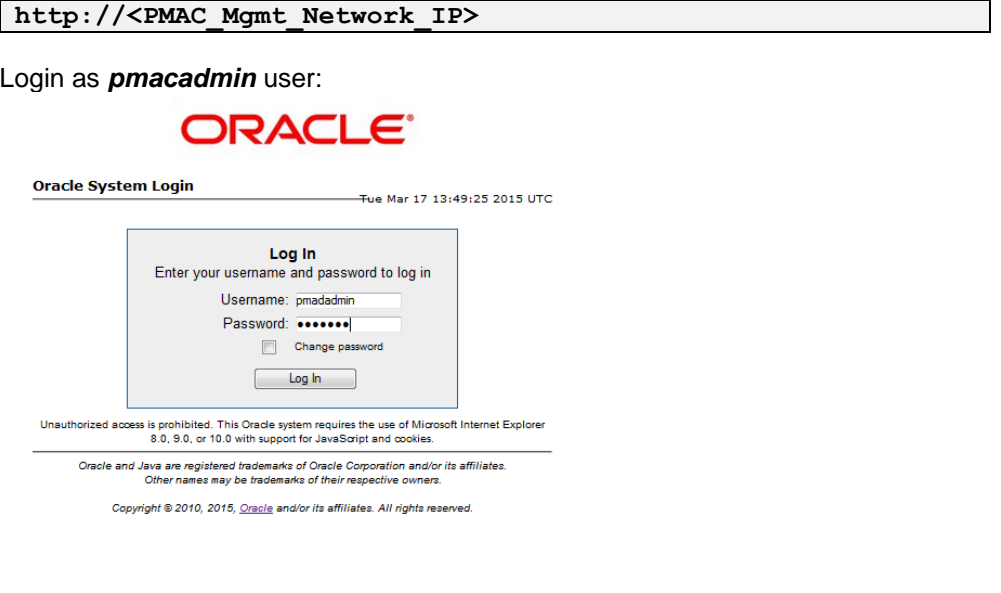
Procedure 4 Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server

<div>2</div> <div></div>	<div>PMAC GUI: Login</div>	<div>Open web browser and enter:</div> <div>http://<PMAC Mgmt Network IP></div> <div>Login as <i>pmacadmin</i> user:</div> <div><div>ORACLE®</div><div>Oracle System Login</div><div>Tue Mar 17 13:49:25 2015 UTC</div><div><div>Log In</div><div>Enter your username and password to log in</div><div>Username: pmadadmin</div><div>Password: ●●●●●●</div><div><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</div><div>Log In</div></div><div>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</div><div>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</div><div>Copyright © 2010, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</div></div>												
<div>3</div> <div></div>	<div>PMAC GUI:</div> <div>Attach the software Image to the PMAC Guest</div>	<div>If in Step 1 the ISO image was transferred directly to the PM&C guest via sftp, skip the rest of this step and continue with step 4. If the image is on a CD or USB device, continue with this step.</div> <div>In the PM&C GUI, navigate to Main Menu -> VM Management. In the "VM Entities" list, select the PM&C guest. On the resulting "View VM Guest" page, select the Media tab.</div> <div>Under the Media tab, find the ISO image in the "Available Media" list, and click its Attach button. After a pause, the image will appear in the "Attached Media" list.</div> <div><div>View VM Guest</div><div>Name: Jetta-DAMP-A</div><div>Host: RMS: Jetta-A</div><div>Current Power State: Running</div><div>On <input type="button" value="Change"/></div><div><div>VM Info</div><div>Software</div><div>Network</div><div>Media</div></div><div><div>Attached Media</div><table><thead><tr><th>Attached</th><th>Image Path</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td><input type="button" value="Detach"/></td><td>/var/TKLC/tvoe/mapping-isos/Jetta-DAMP-A.iso</td></tr><tr><td><input type="button" value="Detach"/></td><td>/media/sdb1/PMAC-6.0.0.0_60.14.0-x86_64.iso</td></tr></tbody></table></div><div><div>Available Media</div><table><thead><tr><th>Attach</th><th>Label</th><th>Image Path</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td><input type="button" value="Attach"/></td><td>6.0.0.0_60.14.0</td><td>/media/sdb1/PMAC-6.0.0.0_60.14.0-x86_64.iso</td></tr></tbody></table></div></div>	Attached	Image Path	<input type="button" value="Detach"/>	/var/TKLC/tvoe/mapping-isos/Jetta-DAMP-A.iso	<input type="button" value="Detach"/>	/media/sdb1/PMAC-6.0.0.0_60.14.0-x86_64.iso	Attach	Label	Image Path	<input type="button" value="Attach"/>	6.0.0.0_60.14.0	/media/sdb1/PMAC-6.0.0.0_60.14.0-x86_64.iso
Attached	Image Path													
<input type="button" value="Detach"/>	/var/TKLC/tvoe/mapping-isos/Jetta-DAMP-A.iso													
<input type="button" value="Detach"/>	/media/sdb1/PMAC-6.0.0.0_60.14.0-x86_64.iso													
Attach	Label	Image Path												
<input type="button" value="Attach"/>	6.0.0.0_60.14.0	/media/sdb1/PMAC-6.0.0.0_60.14.0-x86_64.iso												

Procedure 4 Load Application and TPD ISO onto PMAC Server

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI:</p> <p>Add Application Image</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Software -> Manage Software Images</p> <p>Press Add Image button. Use the drop down to select the image.</p> <div>    </div> <p>If the image was supplied on a CD or a USB drive, it will appear as a virtual device ("device://..."). These devices are assigned in numerical order as CD and USB images become available on the Management Server. The first virtual device is reserved for internal use by TVOE and PMAC; therefore, the iso image of interest is normally present on the second device, "device://dev/sr1". If one or more CD or USB-based images were already present on the Management Server before you started this procedure, choose a correspondingly higher device number.</p> <p>If in Step 1 the image was transferred to PMAC via sftp it will appear in the list as a local file "/var/TKLC/...".</p> <p>Add Software Image</p> <div>  <p>Images may be added from any of these sources:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Oracle-provided media in the PM&C host's CD/DVD drive (Refer to Note) • USB media attached to the PM&C's host (Refer to Note) • External mounts. Prefix the directory with "extfile://". • These local search paths: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ /var/TKLC/upgrade/* .iso ◦ /var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacfpusr/* .iso <p>Note: CD and USB images mounted on PM&C's VM host must first be made accessible to the PM&C \</p> <p>Path: <input type="text" value="/var/TKLC/upgrade/DSR-7.1.0.0.0_71.11.0-x86_64.iso"/></p> <p>Description: <input type="text"/></p> <p>Add New Image</p> </div> <p>Select the appropriate path and Press Add New Image button.</p> <p>You may check the progress using the Task Monitoring link. Observe the green bar indicating success.</p> <p>Once the green bar is displayed, remove the DSR application Media from the optical drive of the management server.</p>
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI:</p> <p>Load TPD ISO</p>	<p>If the TPD ISO hasn't been loaded onto the PMAC already, repeat steps 1 through 4 to load it using the TPD media or ISO.</p>

Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs

STEP #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps needed to create a DSR NOAM virtual machine (referred to as a “guest”) on a TVOE server blade or TVOE RMS. It must be repeated for every NOAM server you wish to install.</p> <p>Prerequisite: TVOE has been installed and configured on the target blade server or RMS</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PMAC GUI: Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>http://<PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP></p> </div> <p>Login as pmacadmin user:</p> 

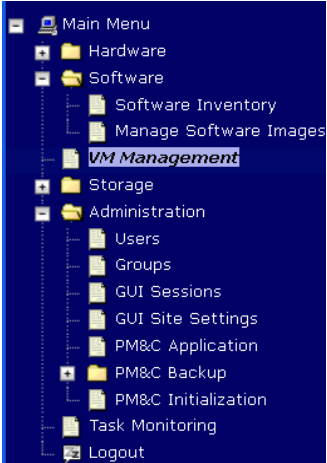
Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs

2

PMAC GUI:

Navigate to VM Management of the Target Server Blade

Navigate to Main Menu -> VM Management



The screenshot shows a dark blue sidebar menu with a tree structure. The 'VM Management' option is highlighted with a yellow background. The menu items are: Main Menu, Hardware, Software (with sub-items Software Inventory and Manage Software Images), VM Management, Storage, Administration (with sub-items Users, Groups, GUI Sessions, GUI Site Settings, PM&C Application, PM&C Backup, and PM&C Initialization), Task Monitoring, and Logout.

Select the TVOE server blade or rack mounted server from the **VM Entities** listing on the left side of the screen. The selected server's guest machine configuration will then be displayed in the remaining area of the window.

Virtual Machine Management

VM Entities

Enc: 9001 Bay: 11F

View VM Host

Name: hostname1322587482 Enclosure: 9001 Bay: 11

VM Info

Software

Network

Guests

Name

Status

Storage Pools

Name

Capacity MB

Allocation MB

Available MB

Bridges

Device

control

iml

xms

Create Guest

Create Guest

Click **Create Guest**

Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs

3



PMAC GUI:
Configure
VM Guest
Parameters

Select **Import Profile**

From the **“ISO/Profile”** drop-down box, select the entry that matches depending on the hardware that your NOAM VM TVOE server is running on and your preference for NetBackup interfaces:

NOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)	Dedicated Netbackup Interface?	Choose Profile (<Application ISO NAME>)➔
HP DL360 RMS , HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade	No	DSR_NOAMP
HP DL360 RMS , HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade	Yes	DSR_NOAMP_NBD
HP DL380 Gen 8 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 9 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	No	DSR_NOAMP_LARGE
HP DL380 Gen 8 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 9 RMS, HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	Yes	DSR_NOAMP_LARGE_NBD

Note: Application_ISO_NAME is the name of the DSR Application ISO to be installed on this NOAM


Press **Select Profile**.

Press **Create**

Procedure 5 Create NOAM Guest VMs

4	<div><div></div><div>PMAC GUI: Wait for Guest Creation to Complete</div></div>	<div><div>Navigate to Main Menu -> Task Monitoring to monitor the progress of the guest creation task. A separate task will appear for each guest creation that you have launched.</div><div>Wait or refresh the screen until you see that the guest creation task has completed successfully.</div><div><table><tr><th>ID</th><th>Task</th><th>Target</th><th>Status</th><th>Running Time</th><th>Start Time</th><th>Progress</th></tr><tr><td>1739</td><td>VirtAction: Create</td><td>Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP</td><td>Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)</td><td>0:00:04</td><td>2011-11-29 20:36:11</td><td>100%</td></tr></table></div></div>	ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress	1739	VirtAction: Create	Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP	Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)	0:00:04	2011-11-29 20:36:11	100%
ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress										
1739	VirtAction: Create	Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP	Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)	0:00:04	2011-11-29 20:36:11	100%										
5	<div><div></div><div>PMAC GUI: Verify Guest Machine is Running</div></div>	<div><div>Navigate to Main Menu -> VM Management</div><div>Select the TVOE server blade on which the guest machine was just created.</div><div>Look at the list of guests present on the blade and verify that you see a guest that matches the name you configured and that its status is “Running”.</div><div><div><div><div>Virtual Machine Management</div><div><div>Tasks</div><div><div>VM Entities</div><div>Refresh</div><div><div>RMS: Jetta-A</div><div><div>Jetta-DAMP</div><div>Jetta-IPFE-A</div><div>Jetta-NO-A</div><div>Jetta-PMAC</div><div>Jetta-SO-A</div></div></div></div><div><div>View VM Guest</div><div>Name: Jetta-NO-A</div><div>Host: RMS: Jetta-A</div><div><div>Current Power State: Running</div><div>On</div><div>Change</div></div><div><div>VM Info</div><div>Software</div><div>Network</div><div>Media</div></div><div><div>Num vCPUs: 4</div><div>Memory (MBs): 6,144</div><div>VM UUID: 913ccfff-ba1f-4844-954f-648ab2fbacda</div><div>Enable Virtual Watchdog: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></div></div></div></div></div></div></div><div>VM Creation for this guest is complete. Repeat from Step 2 for any remaining NOAM VMs (<i>for instance, the standby NOAM</i>) that must be created.</div></div>														

Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps needed to create a DSR SOAM virtual machine (referred to as a “guest”) on a TVOE server blade. It must be repeated for every SOAM server you wish to install.</p> <p>Prerequisite: TVOE has been installed and configured on the target blade server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PMAC GUI: Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p>http://<PMAC Mgmt Network IP></p> </div> <p>Login as <i>pmacadmin</i> user:</p> 

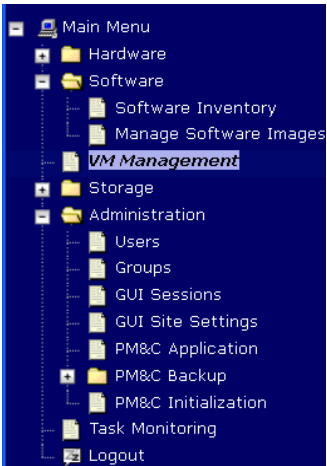
Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs

2

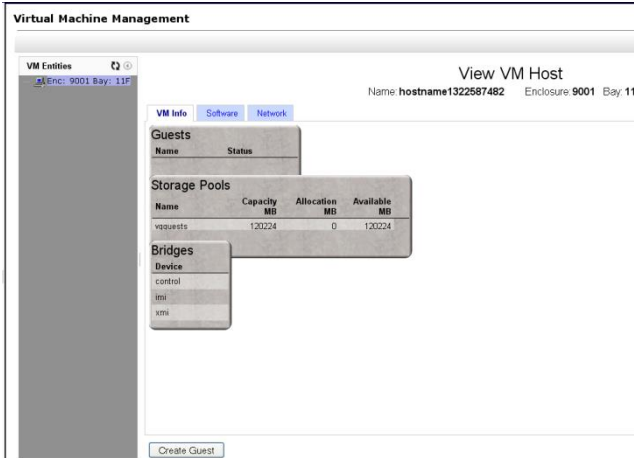
PMAC GUI:

Navigate to VM Management of the Target Server Blade

Navigate to Main Menu -> VM Management



Select the TVOE server blade or rack mounted server from the **VM Entities** listing on the left side of the screen. The selected server's guest machine configuration will then be displayed in the remaining area of the window.



Click **Create Guest**

Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs

3 **PMAC GUI:**
Configure
VM Guest
Parameters

Select **Import Profile**

From the **“ISO/Profile”** drop-down box, select the entry that matches depending on the hardware that your SOAM VM TVOE server is running on and your preference for NetBackup interfaces:

SOAM VM TVOE Hardware Type(s)	Dedicated Netbackup Interface?	Choose Profile (<Application ISO NAME>)➔
HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	No	DSR_SOAM
HP BL460 Gen 8 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 6 Blade, HP BL460 Gen 9 Blade	Yes	DSR_SOAM_NBD

Note: Application_ISO_NAME is the name of the DSR Application ISO to be installed on this SOAM

Press **Select Profile**.

You can edit the name, if you wish. For instance: **“DSR_SOAM_A,”** or **DSR_SOAM_B”**. *(This will not become the ultimate hostname. It is just an internal tag for the VM host manager.)*

Press **Create**


Create

Procedure 6 Create SOAM Guest VMs

<div>4</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<div>PMAC GUI:</div> <div>Wait for Guest Creation to Complete</div>	<div>Navigate to Main Menu -> Task Monitoring to monitor the progress of the guest creation task. A separate task will appear for each guest creation that you have launched.</div> <div>Wait or refresh the screen until you see that the guest creation task has completed successfully.</div> <div><table><tr><th>ID</th><th>Task</th><th>Target</th><th>Status</th><th>Running Time</th><th>Start Time</th><th>Progress</th></tr><tr><td>1739</td><td>VirtAction: Create</td><td>Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP</td><td>Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)</td><td>0:00:04</td><td>2011-11-29 20:36:11</td><td>100%</td></tr></table></div>	ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress	1739	VirtAction: Create	Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP	Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)	0:00:04	2011-11-29 20:36:11	100%
ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress										
1739	VirtAction: Create	Enc:9001 Bay:11F Guest: DSR_NOAMP	Guest creation completed (DSR_NOAMP)	0:00:04	2011-11-29 20:36:11	100%										
<div>5</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<div>PMAC GUI:</div> <div>Verify Guest Machine is Running</div>	<div>Navigate to Main Menu -> VM Management</div> <div>Select the TVOE server blade on which the guest machine was just created.</div> <div>Look at the list of guests present on the blade and verify that you see a guest that matches the name you configured and that its status is “Running”.</div> <div><div><div><div>Virtual Machine Management</div><div>Tasks ▾</div><div><div>VM Entities</div><div>Refresh ↺</div><div><div>RMS: Jetta-A</div><div><div>Jetta-DAMP</div><div>Jetta-IPFE-A</div><div>Jetta-NO-A</div><div>Jetta-PMAC</div><div>Jetta-SO-A</div></div></div></div><div><div>View VM Guest</div><div>Name: Jetta-NO-A</div><div>Host: RMS: Jetta-A</div><div><div>VM Info</div><div>Software</div><div>Network</div><div>Media</div></div><div><div>Num vCPUs: 4</div><div>Memory (MBs): 6,144</div><div>VM UUID: 913ccfff-ba1f-4844-954f-648ab2fbacda</div><div>Enable Virtual Watchdog: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/></div></div></div><div><div>Current Power State: Running</div><div>On ▾</div><div>Change</div></div></div></div></div>														
<div>VM Creation for this guest is complete. Repeat from Step 2 for any remaining NOAM VMs (<i>for instance, the standby SOAM</i>) that must be created.</div>																

4.4 Install Application Software on Servers

Procedure 7 IPM Blades and VMs

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to install TPD on Blade servers and Blade server guest VMs</p> <p>Prerequisite: Enclosures containing the blade servers targeted for IPM that have been configured.</p> <p>Prerequisite: TVOE has been installed and configured on Blade servers that will host DSR NOAM VMs.</p> <p>Prerequisite: DSR NOAM and SOAM Guest VMs have been created successfully.</p> <p>Needed material:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- TPD Media (64-bits) <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PMAC GUI: Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div><p><code>http://<PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP></code></p></div> <p>Login as <i>pmacadmin</i> user:</p> <div></div>

Procedure 7 IPM Blades and VMs

2

PMAC GUI:
Select
Servers for
OS install

<







Procedure 7 IPM Blades and VMs

4

☐


PMAC GUI:
Monitor OS
Install

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Task Monitoring** to monitor the progress of the OS Installation background task. A separate task will appear for each blade affected.

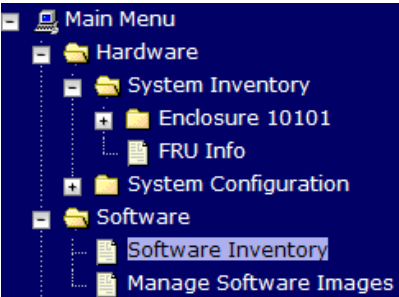
ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress
 14	Install OS	Enc: 10101 Bay: 15F	Boot install image	0:00:01	2011-09-20 11:12:02	<div>50%</div>
 13	Install OS	Enc: 10101 Bay: 8F	Boot install image	0:00:01	2011-09-20 11:12:02	<div>50%</div>
 12	Install OS	Enc: 10101 Bay: 7F	Boot install image	0:00:01	2011-09-20 11:12:02	<div>50%</div>
 11	Install OS	Enc: 10101 Bay: 2F	Boot install image	0:00:01	2011-09-20 11:12:02	<div>50%</div>
 10	Install OS	Enc: 10101 Bay: 1f	Boot install image	0:00:02	2011-09-20 11:12:01	<div>50%</div>
 9	Add Image		Done: TPD.install-5.0.0_72.20.0-CentOS5.6-x86_64	0:00:09	2011-09-20 11:01:50	<div>100%</div>

When the installation is complete, the task will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".

Procedure 8 Install the Application Software on Blades

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to install Diameter Signaling Router on the Blade servers.</p> <p>Prerequisite: Procedure 7 has been completed.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PMAC GUI: Login</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> http://<PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP> </div> <p>Login as pmacadmin user:</p>  <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p> <p>Copyright © 2010, 2015, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.</p>

Procedure 8 Install the Application Software on Blades

<div>2</div> <div></div>	<div>PMAC GUI:</div> <div>Select Servers for Application install</div>	<div>Navigate to Software -> Software Inventory.</div> <div></div> <div>Select the servers on which the application is to be installed. If you want to install the same application image to more than one server, you may select multiple servers by clicking multiple rows individually. Selected rows will be highlighted in green.</div> <div><div>Note: VM's will have the text "Guest: <VM_GUEST_NAME>" underneath the physical blade that hosts them.</div><table><tr><th>Ident</th><th>IP Address</th><th>Hostname</th><th>Plat Name</th><th>Plat Version</th><th>App Name</th><th>App Version</th><th>Design</th><th>Fur</th></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:1F</td><td>192.168.1.247</td><td>hostname1316543479</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:2F</td><td>192.168.1.248</td><td>hostname1316543574</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:7F</td><td>192.168.1.250</td><td>hostname1316543105</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:8F</td><td>192.168.1.249</td><td>hostname1316543051</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:13F</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:15F</td><td>192.168.1.251</td><td>hostname1316543058</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td></td><td>192.168.1.1</td><td>pmac-mrsvnc-1</td><td>TPD (i686)</td><td>5.0.0-72.20.0</td><td>PMAC</td><td>4.0.0_40.11.0</td><td>1A</td><td>PM</td></tr></table><div>Click on Upgrade</div><div><div>Install OS</div><div>Upgrade</div><div>Refresh</div></div></div>	Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Design	Fur	Enc:10101 Bay:1F	192.168.1.247	hostname1316543479	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0					Enc:10101 Bay:2F	192.168.1.248	hostname1316543574	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0					Enc:10101 Bay:7F	192.168.1.250	hostname1316543105	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0					Enc:10101 Bay:8F	192.168.1.249	hostname1316543051	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0					Enc:10101 Bay:13F									Enc:10101 Bay:15F	192.168.1.251	hostname1316543058	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0						192.168.1.1	pmac-mrsvnc-1	TPD (i686)	5.0.0-72.20.0	PMAC	4.0.0_40.11.0	1A	PM
Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Design	Fur																																																																		
Enc:10101 Bay:1F	192.168.1.247	hostname1316543479	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:2F	192.168.1.248	hostname1316543574	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:7F	192.168.1.250	hostname1316543105	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:8F	192.168.1.249	hostname1316543051	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
Enc:10101 Bay:13F																																																																										
Enc:10101 Bay:15F	192.168.1.251	hostname1316543058	TPD (x86_64)	5.0.0-72.20.0																																																																						
	192.168.1.1	pmac-mrsvnc-1	TPD (i686)	5.0.0-72.20.0	PMAC	4.0.0_40.11.0	1A	PM																																																																		
<div>3</div> <div></div>	<div>PMAC GUI:</div> <div>Initiate Application Install</div>	<div>The left side of this screen shows the servers to be affected by this OS installation. From the list of available bootable images on the right side of the screen, select one OS image to install to all of the selected servers.</div> <div><div><div>Targets</div><table><tr><th>Entity</th><th>Status</th></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:1F</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:2F</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:7F</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:8F</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Enc:10101 Bay:15F</td><td></td></tr></table></div><div><div>Select an ISO to Upgrade on the listed Entities</div><table><tr><th>Image Name</th><th>Type</th><th>Architecture</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>TPD-5.0.0_72.20.0-x86_64</td><td>Bootable</td><td>x86_64</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>DSR-3.0.0_30.8.0-872-2329-101-x86_64</td><td>Upgrade</td><td>x86_64</td><td></td></tr></table></div></div> <div>Click on Start Upgrade, a confirmation window will pop up, click on Ok to proceed with the install.</div> <div><div>Start Upgrade</div></div>	Entity	Status	Enc:10101 Bay:1F		Enc:10101 Bay:2F		Enc:10101 Bay:7F		Enc:10101 Bay:8F		Enc:10101 Bay:15F		Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description	TPD-5.0.0_72.20.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64		DSR-3.0.0_30.8.0-872-2329-101-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64																																																	
Entity	Status																																																																									
Enc:10101 Bay:1F																																																																										
Enc:10101 Bay:2F																																																																										
Enc:10101 Bay:7F																																																																										
Enc:10101 Bay:8F																																																																										
Enc:10101 Bay:15F																																																																										
Image Name	Type	Architecture	Description																																																																							
TPD-5.0.0_72.20.0-x86_64	Bootable	x86_64																																																																								
DSR-3.0.0_30.8.0-872-2329-101-x86_64	Upgrade	x86_64																																																																								

Procedure 8 Install the Application Software on Blades

4

PMAC GUI:

Monitor the installation status

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Task Monitoring** to monitor the progress of the Application Installation task. A separate task will appear for each blade affected.

ID	Task	Target	Status	Running Time	Start Time	Progress
25	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:15F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:08	40%
24	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:8F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:08	40%
23	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:7F	Task ID assigned	0:00:01	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%
22	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:2F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%
21	Upgrade	Enc:10101 Bay:1F	Task ID assigned	0:00:00	2011-09-20 14:36:07	40%
20	Add Image		Done: 872-2329-101-3.0.0_30.8.0-DSR-x86_64	0:00:06	2011-09-20 14:24:41	100%

When the installation is complete, the task will change to green and the Progress bar will indicate "100%".

5

PMAC GUI:

Accept/Reject Upgrade

Navigate to **Software -> Software Inventory** to accept the software installation. Select all the servers on which the application has been installed in the previous steps and click on **Accept Upgrade** as shown below.

Note: On some RMS and Blade servers, the GUI may not provide the option to **accept/reject** upgrade. So first verify in **"task monitoring"** that the upgrade is not in progress, then manually accept or reject the upgrade by ssh'ing into the server and execute:

To accept:

/var/TKLC/backout/accept

To reject:

/var/TKLC/backout/reject

Software Inventory

Filter

Ident	IP Address	Hostname	Plat Name	Plat Version	App Name	App Version	Desig	Fun
Enc:50202 Bay:1F	192.168.1.4	RDU02-NO	TPD (x86_64)	6.0.0-80.16.0	DSR	4.0.0-0.40333		
Enc:50202 Bay:2F	192.168.1.167	RDU02-MP	TPD (x86_64)	6.0.0-80.16.0	DSR	Pending Acc/Rej		

Install OS

Upgrade

Accept Upgrade

Reject Upgrade

Refresh


Note: Once the upgrade has been accepted, the App version will change from **"Pending Acc/Rej"** to the version number of the application.

4.5 Application Configuration: NOAMs

Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

STEP #		<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the First NOAM server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>																		
1	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> <p>Save the NOAM Network Data to an XML file</p>	<p>Using a text editor, create a NOAM Network Element file that describes the networking of the target install environment of your first NOAM server.</p> <p>Select an appropriate file name and save the file to a known location on your computer.</p> <p>A suggested filename format is “Appname_NName_NetworkElement.XML”, so for example a DSR2 NOAM network element XML file would have a filename “DSR2_NOAM_NetworkElement.xml”.</p> <p>Alternatively, you can update the sample DSR 7.0/7.1 Network Element file. It can be found on the management server at:</p> <div><code>/usr/TKLC/smac/etc/SAMPLE-NetworkElement.xml</code></div> <p>A sample XML file can also be found in Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles.</p> <p>Note: The following limitations apply when specifying a Network Element name: A 1-32-character string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and underscore. Must contain at least one alpha and must not start with a digit.</p>																		
2	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> <p>Exchange SSH keys between PMAC and first NOAM server</p>	<p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the first NOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to Main Menu -> Software -> Software Inventory.</p> <table><tr><td>RMS: Jetta-A</td><td>192.168.1.17</td><td>Jetta-NO-1</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>7.0.0.0.0-88.14.0</td><td>DSR</td><td>7.1.0.0.0-71.11.0</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Guest: Jetta-NO-A</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table> <p>Note the IP address for the first NOAM server.</p> <p>Login to the PMAC terminal as the admusr.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the admusr user, exchange SSH keys for admusr between the PMAC and the 1st NOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the NOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the admusr user of the NOAM server.</p> <div><code>\$ keyexchange admusr@<NO1_Control_IP Address></code></div>	RMS: Jetta-A	192.168.1.17	Jetta-NO-1	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.0.0.0-88.14.0	DSR	7.1.0.0.0-71.11.0			Guest: Jetta-NO-A								
RMS: Jetta-A	192.168.1.17	Jetta-NO-1	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.0.0.0-88.14.0	DSR	7.1.0.0.0-71.11.0														
Guest: Jetta-NO-A																				

Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Connect a Web Browser to the NOAM GUI</p>	<p>Plug a laptop Ethernet cable onto an unused, un-configured port on the 4948 switch (<i>if available in your installation</i>) or use SSH Tunneling through the PMAC to connect the laptop to the NOAM server.</p> <p>If you are using tunneling, then you can skip the rest of this step and instead complete the instructions in Appendix G: Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty (for using Putty) or Appendix H: Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows (for OpenSSH). OpenSSH is recommended if you are using a Windows 7 PC.</p> <p>From the PMAC, enable the switch port that the laptop is plugged into.</p> <p>Enable that laptop Ethernet port to acquire a DHCP address and then access the NOAM-“A” GUI via its control IP address.</p>
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM GUI: Login</p>	<p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 

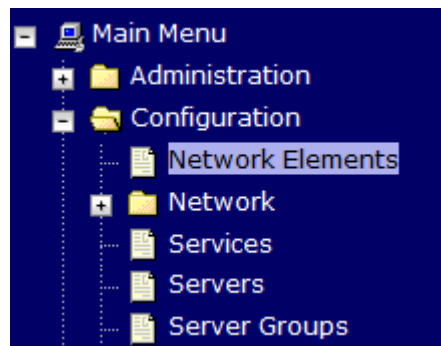
Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

5



Create the NOAM Network Element using the XML File

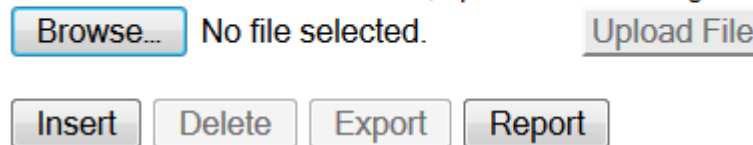
Navigate to **Main Menu->Configuration->Network Elements**



Select the **Browse/ChooseFile** button, and enter the pathname of the NOAM network XML file.

Select the **Upload File** button to upload the XML file and configure the NOAM Network Element.

To create a new Network Element, upload a valid configuration file:



Once the data has been uploaded, you should see a folder appear with the name of your network element. Click on this folder and you will get a drop-down which describes the individual networks that are now configured:

Network Element				
NO_9006005				
Network Name	Network Address	Netmask	VLAN ID	Gateway IP Address
INTERNALXMI	10.240.10.32	255.255.255.224	3	10.240.10.35
INTERNALIMI	10.240.10.0	255.255.255.224	4	10.240.10.3

Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Map Services to Networks</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu ->Configuration-> Services.</p> <p>Select the Edit button and set the Services as shown in the table below:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Intra-NE Network</th><th>Inter-NE Network</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OAM</td><td><IMI Network></td><td><XMI Network></td></tr> <tr> <td>Replication</td><td><IMI Network></td><td><XMI Network></td></tr> <tr> <td>Signaling</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>HA_Secondary</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>HA_MP_Secondary</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>Replication_MP</td><td><IMI Network></td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>ComAgent</td><td><IMI Network></td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For example, if your IMI network is named IMI and your XMI network is named XMI, then your services should config should look like the following:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Intra-NE Network</th><th>Inter-NE Network</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OAM</td><td>IMI</td><td>XMI</td></tr> <tr> <td>Replication</td><td>IMI</td><td>XMI</td></tr> <tr> <td>Signaling</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>HA_Secondary</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>HA_MP_Secondary</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>Replication_MP</td><td>IMI</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>ComAgent</td><td>IMI</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the Ok button to apply the Service-to-Network selections.</p> <p>Press Ok for the following prompt to restart all servers.</p> <div> <p>The page at https://localhost says:</p> <p>You must restart all Servers to apply any services changes, ComAgent</p> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> </div>	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	OAM	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>	Replication	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>	Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	Unspecified	ComAgent	<IMI Network>	Unspecified	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	OAM	IMI	XMI	Replication	IMI	XMI	Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	Replication_MP	IMI	Unspecified	ComAgent	IMI	Unspecified
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network																																																
OAM	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>																																																
Replication	<IMI Network>	<XMI Network>																																																
Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	Unspecified																																																
ComAgent	<IMI Network>	Unspecified																																																
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network																																																
OAM	IMI	XMI																																																
Replication	IMI	XMI																																																
Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																																
Replication_MP	IMI	Unspecified																																																
ComAgent	IMI	Unspecified																																																

Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

7

Insert the 1st NOAM server

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers.**

Select the **Insert** button to insert the new NOAM server into servers table (the first or server).

Attribute	Value	Description
Hostname	NO-Server1 *	Unique name for the server. [Default string. Valid characters are alphanumeric and end with a hyphen.]
Role	NETWORK OAM&P *	Select the function of the server
System ID	NO-Server1	System ID for the NOAMP or SOA. 64-character string. Valid value is alphanumeric.
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest	Hardware profile of the server
Network Element Name	NOAMMEMORYTEST *	Select the network element
Location		Location description [Default = "", value is any text string.]

Fill in the fields as follows:

Hostname: <Hostname>

Role: NETWORK OAM&P

System ID: <Site System ID>

Hardware Profile: DSR TVOE Guest

Network Element Name: [Choose NE from Drop Down Box]

The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element

Interfaces:		
Network	IP Address	Interface
INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.155	xmi <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)
INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.10	imi <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)

Ok

Apply

Cancel

Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select **xmi** for the interface. **Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.**

Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select **imi** for the interface. **Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.**

Next, add the following NTP servers:

NTP Server	Preferred?
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO1)/TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO1)>	Yes

Select the **Ok** button when you have completed entering all the server data.

8

Export the Initial Configuration

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers.**

From the GUI screen, select the NOAM server and then select **Export** to generate the initial configuration data for that server.

Insert

Edit

Delete

Export

Report

Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM iLO: Copy Configuration File to 1st NOAM Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal window to the 1st NOAM server, logging in as the admusr user. (See Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access for instructions on how to access the NOAM from iLO)</p> <p>Copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt directory on the 1st NOAM to the /var/tmp directory.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like TKLCConfigData.<hostname>.sh. The following is an example:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cp /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/TKLCConfigData.blade01.sh /var/tmp/TKLCConfigData.sh</pre>
<p>10</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM iLO: Wait for Configuration to Complete</p>	<p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named "TKLCConfigData.sh" in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Wait to be prompted to reboot the server, but DO NOT reboot the server, it will be rebooted later on in this procedure.</p> <p>Note: Ignore the warning about removing the USB key, since no USB key is present. .</p>
<p>11</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM iLO: Set the Time zone and Reboot the Server</p>	<p>From the command line prompt, execute set_ini_tz.pl. This will set the system time zone. The following command example uses the America/New_York time zone.</p> <p>Replace as appropriate with the time zone you have selected for this installation. For a full list of valid time zones, see Appendix I: List of Frequently used Time Zones.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/appworks/bin/set_ini_tz.pl "America/New_York" >/dev/null 2>&1</pre> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

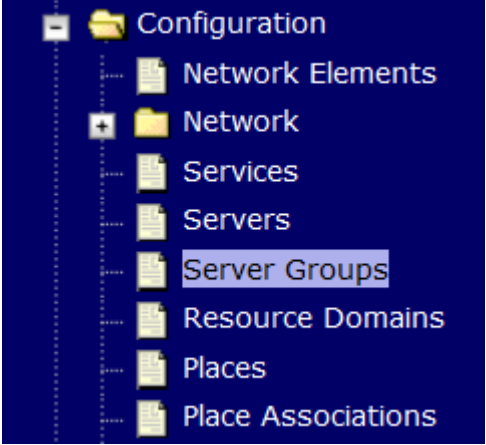
Procedure 9 Configure the First NOAM NE and Server

12 <input type="checkbox"/>	1st NOAM: Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)	<p>Note: You will only execute this step if your NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <p>Obtain a terminal window to the 1st NOAM server, logging in as the admusr user.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=netbackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=<NO1_NetBackup_IP_Address> --netmask=<NO1_NetBackup_NetMask></pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=<NO1_NetBackup_Network_ID> --netmask=<NO1_NetBackup_NetMask> --gateway=<NO1_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address></pre>
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	1st NOAM Server: Verify Server Health	<p>Execute the following command on the 1st NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>

Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the NOAM server group.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>NOAM GUI: Login</p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><p><code>http://<NO1_XMI_IP_Address></code></p></div> <p>Login as the guiadmin user:</p> <div></div>

Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM GUI: Enter NOAM Server Group Data	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Server Groups</p>  <p>Select Insert and fill the following fields:</p> <div><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Server Group Name: <Enter Server Group Name>• Level: A• Parent : None• Function: DSR (Active/Standby Pair)• WAN Replication Connection Count: Use Default Value <p>Select OK when all fields are filled in.</p>
-------------------------------	--	--

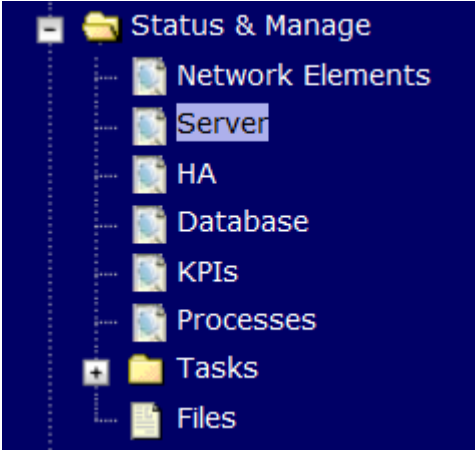
Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

3	NOAM GUI: Edit the NOAM Server Group	<p>From the GUI Main Menu -> Configuration -> Server Groups.</p> <p>Select the new server group, and then select Edit</p> <div><div>Insert</div><div>Edit</div><div>Delete</div><div>Report</div></div> <p>Select the Network Element that represents the NOAM.</p> <table><tr><td colspan="3">NO_900060103</td></tr><tr><td>Server</td><td>SG Inclusion</td><td>Preferred HA Role</td></tr><tr><td>HPC6NO</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr></table> <p>In the portion of the screen that lists the servers for the server group, find the NOAM server being configured.</p> <p>Click the Include in SG checkbox.</p> <p>Leave other boxes blank.</p> <p>Press OK</p>	NO_900060103			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	HPC6NO	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
NO_900060103											
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role									
HPC6NO	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare									


Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM: Verify NOAM blade server role</p>	<p>From terminal window to the iLO of the first NOAM server, execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ha.mystate</pre> <p>Verify that the DbReplication and VIP item under the resourceId column has a value of Active under the role column.</p> <p>You might have to wait a few minutes for it to become in that state.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>[admusr@Jetta-NO-1 ~]\$ ha.mystate resourceId role node subResources lastUpdate DbReplication Active A1027.209 0 0316:161158.499 VIP Active A1027.209 0 0316:161158.501 pSbrBBaseRepl OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.074 pSbrBindingRes OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.074 pSbrSBaseRepl OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.075 pSbrSessionRes OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.075 PSBR_B_Proc OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.074 PSBR_S_Proc OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.075 CacdProcessRes Active A1027.209 0 0316:161158.501 DA_MP Leader OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.071 DSR_SLDB OOS A1027.209 0-63 0316:155546.071 VIP_DA_MP OOS A1027.209 0-63 0316:155546.072 EXGSTACK_Process OOS A1027.209 0-63 0316:155546.072 DSR_Process OOS A1027.209 0-63 0316:155546.072 CAPM_HELP_Proc OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.070 DSROAM_Proc Active A1027.209 0 0316:161158.497 CAPM_PSFS_Proc OOS A1027.209 0 0316:155546.070 SS7_MP_Process_HA_Proc OOS A1027.209 0-63 0316:155546.073 SS7_MP_Process OOS A1027.209 0-63 0316:155546.074</pre>
--	---	--

Procedure 10 Configure the NOAM Server Group

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM GUI: Restart NOAM Server	<p>From the NOAM GUI, select the Main menu -> Status & Manage -> Server menu.</p>  <p>Select the NOAM server. Select the Restart button.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Stop"/> <input type="button" value="Restart"/> <input type="button" value="Reboot"/> <input type="button" value="NTP Sync"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Answer OK to the confirmation popup.</p> <p>Are you sure you wish to restart application software on the following server(s)? Jetta-NO-1</p> <p><input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> <p>Wait for restart to complete.</p>
-------------------------------	--	--

Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the Second NOAM server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Exchange SSH keys between PMAC and first NOAM server	<p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the second NOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to Main Menu -> Software -> Software Inventory.</p> <p>Note the IP address for the Second NOAM server.</p> <p>Login to the PMAC terminal as the admusr.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the admusr user, exchange SSH keys for admusr between the PMAC and the 2nd NOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the NOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the admusr user of the NOAM server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@<NO2_Control_IP_Address></pre> <p>Note: if keyexchange fails, edit /home/admusr/.ssh/known_hosts and remove blank lines, and retry the keyexchange commands.</p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <pre>https://<NO1_XMI_IP_Address></pre> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> 

Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server

3

NOAM GUI:
Insert the 2nd
NOAM server

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers.**

Select the **Insert** button to insert the 2nd NOAM server into servers table (the first or server).

Adding a new server

Attribute	Value
Hostname	NO-Server2 *
Role	NETWORK OAM&P *
System ID	NO-Server2
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest
Network Element Name	JETTA *
Location	

Fill in the fields as follows:

Hostname: <Hostname>

Role: NETWORK OAM&P

System ID: <Site System ID>

Hardware Profile: DSR TVOE Guest

Network Element Name: [Choose NE from Drop Down Box]

The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element

Interfaces:		
Network	IP Address	Interface
INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.155	xmi <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)
INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.10	imi <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)

Ok

Apply

Cancel

Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select **xmi** for the interface. **Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.**

Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select **imi** for the interface. **Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.**

Next, add the following NTP servers:

NTP Server	Preferred?
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(NO2)>	Yes

Select the **Ok** button when you have completed entering all the server data.

Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server

4 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM GUI: Export the Initial Configuration	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers.</p> <p>From the GUI screen, select the NOAM server and then select Export to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> Insert Edit Delete Export Report </div>
5 <input type="checkbox"/>	1st NOAM Server: Copy Configuration File to 2 nd NOAM Server	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the 1st NOAM as the admusr user.</p> <p>Use the awpushcfg utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt directory on the 1st NOAM to the 2nd NOAM server, using the Control network IP address for the 2nd NOAM server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like "TKLCConfigData.<hostname>.sh".</p> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the local control network address from the PMAC. • Username: Use admusr • Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the 2nd NOAM server). • Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in step 3
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	2nd NOAM Server: Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Server	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the 2nd NOAM iLO from the OA. (Use the procedure in Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access.</p> <p>Login as the admusr user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named "TKLCConfigData.sh" in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>

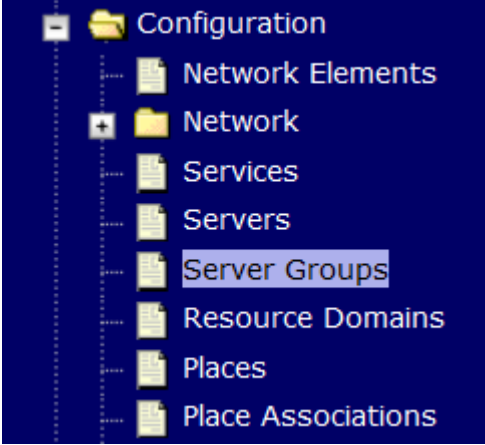
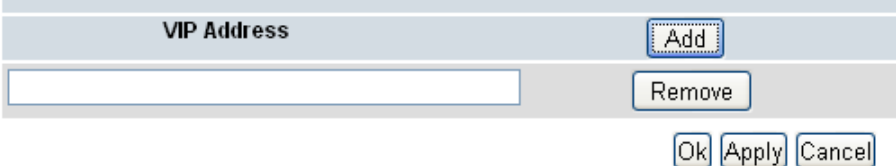
Procedure 11 Configure the Second NOAM Server

<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>2nd NOAM Server: Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)</p>	<p>Note: You will only execute this step if your NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p> <p>Obtain a terminal window to the 2nd NOAM server, logging in as the admusr user.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=netbackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=<NO2_NetBackup_IP_Address> --netmask=<NO2_NetBackup_NetMask></pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=<NO1_NetBackup_Network_ID> --netmask=<NO2_NetBackup_NetMask> --gateway=<NO2_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address></pre>
<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>2nd NOAM Server: Verify Server Health</p>	<p>Execute the following command on the 2nd NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>

Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to finish configuring the NOAM server group.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM GUI: Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the first NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <code>http://<NO1_XMI_IP_Address></code> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div>  </div>

Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM GUI: Edit the NOAM Server Group Data	<p>Navigate to Main Menu->Configuration->Server Groups.</p>  <p>Select the NOAM Server group and click on Edit</p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Add the 2nd NOAM server to the Server Group by clicking the <i>Include in SG</i> checkbox for the 2nd NOAM server.</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="3">RMSNO_900060102</th></tr><tr><th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>RMSNOA</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr><tr><td>RMSNOB</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Click Apply.</p> <p>Add a NOAM VIP by click on Add. Fill in the VIP Address and press Ok as shown below</p> 	RMSNO_900060102			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	RMSNOA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	RMSNOB	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
RMSNO_900060102														
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role												
RMSNOA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												
RMSNOB	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												

Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration

3

NOAM VIP:
Establish GUI
Session

Establish a GUI session on the NOAM by using the XMI VIP address:

http://<NOAM_VIP_IP_Address>

Login as user **guiadmin**.

ORACLE®

Oracle System Login

Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT

Log In

Enter your username and password to log in

Username:

Password:

☐ Change password

Log In

Welcome to the Oracle System Login.

Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates.
Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

4

NOAM VIP:
Wait for
Remote
Database
Alarm to Clear

Wait for the alarm **Remote Database re-initialization in progress** to be cleared before proceeding.

Navigate to **Main menu->Alarms & Events->View Active**

Main Menu: Alarms & Events -> View History (Filtered)

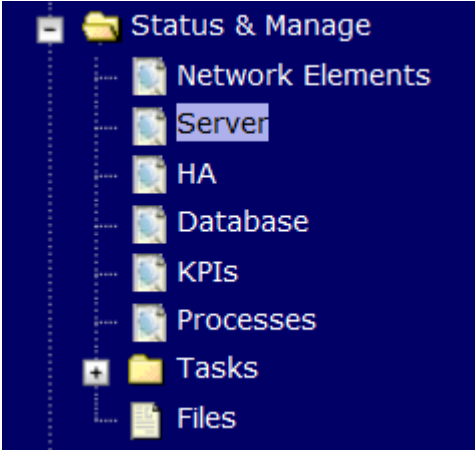
Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT

Filter

Tasks

Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type
	Event Text		Additional Info					
414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoapS erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG
	Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed					
413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoapS erver	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG
	Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Remote Database re-initialization in progress					

Procedure 12 Complete NOAM Server Group Configuration

<div>5</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<p>NOAM GUI: Restart 1st NOAM Server</p>	<p>From the NOAM GUI, select the Main menu -> Status & Manage -> Server menu.</p>  <p>Select the 2nd NOAM server. Select the Restart button.</p> <div><input type="button" value="Stop"/> <input type="button" value="Restart"/> <input type="button" value="Reboot"/> <input type="button" value="NTP Sync"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></div> <p>Answer OK to the confirmation popup.</p> <div><p>Are you sure you wish to restart application software on the following server(s)? Jetta-NO-2</p></div> <div><div>OK</div><div>Cancel</div></div> <p>Wait for restart to complete. Wait approximately 3-5 minutes before proceeding.</p>
--	--	--

4.6 Application Configuration: NetBackup Client Installation (Optional)

Procedure 13 Install NetBackup Client (Optional)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will download and install NetBackup Client software on the server.</p> <p>Location of the bpstart_notify and bpend_notify scripts is required for the execution of this procedure. For Appworks based applications the scripts are located as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">- /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/bpstart_notify- /usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin/bpend_notify <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Install NetBackup Client Software	<p>If a customer has a way of transferring and installing the net Backup client without the aid of TPD tools (push configuration) then use Appendix J 2</p> <p>Note: This is not common. If the answer to the previous question is not known then use Appendix J 1</p>
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Install NetBackup Client Software	<p>Choose the same method used in step 1 to install NetBackup on the 2nd NOAM.</p>

4.7 Application Configuration: Disaster Recovery NOAM (Optional)

Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the First DR NOAM server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI: Login</p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI VIP IP address. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><p><code>http://<NOAM_XMI_VIP_IP_Address></code></p></div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div></div>

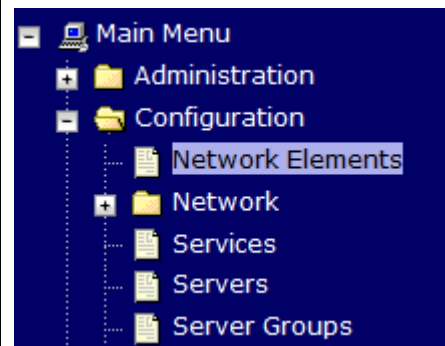
Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

2

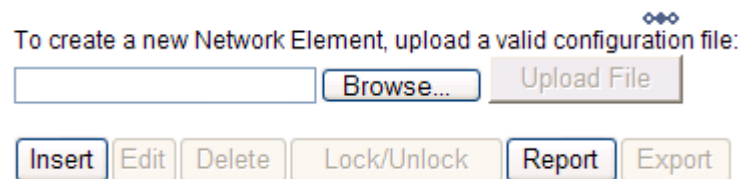


PRIMARY NOAM VIP
GUI: Insert the DR NOAM Network Element

Navigate to **Main Menu->Configuration->Network Elements**

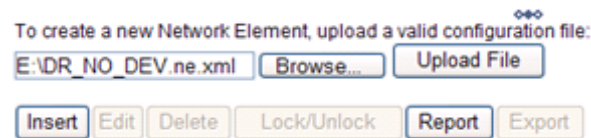


The **Network Elements** screen will display select the **Browse** (scroll to bottom left corner of screen).



A dialogue will pop up, browse to the location of the DSR DR NOAM Site Element XML File and click the **Open** button.

Then click **Upload File** as shown below



Once the data has been uploaded, you should see a folder appear with the name of your network element. Click on this folder and you will get a drop-down which describes the individual networks that are now configured:

Network Element				
NO_9006005				
Network Name	Network Address	Netmask	VLAN ID	Gateway IP Address
INTERNALXMI	10.240.10.32	255.255.255.224	3	10.240.10.35
INTERNALIMI	10.240.10.0	255.255.255.224	4	10.240.10.3

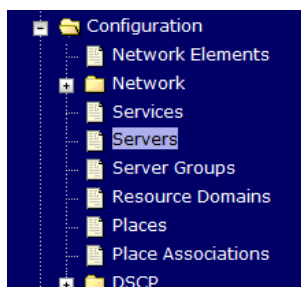
Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

3



PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI: Insert the 1st DR-NOAM server

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers.**



Select the **Insert** button to insert the new DR-NOAM server into servers table.

Adding a new server

Attribute	Value
Hostname	DR-NOAM-A *
Role	NETWORK OAM&P *
System ID	DR-NOAM-A
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest
Network Element Name	- Unassigned - *
Location	

Fill in the fields as follows:

Hostname: <Hostname>

Role: NETWORK OAM&P

System ID: <Site System ID>

Hardware Profile: DSR TVOE Guest

Network Element Name: [Choose NE from Drop Down Box]

The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element

Interfaces:		
Network	IP Address	Interface
INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.155	xmi <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)
INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.10	imi <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)

Ok Apply Cancel

Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select **xmi** for the interface. **Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.**

Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select **imi** for the interface. **Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.**

Next, add the following NTP servers:

NTP Server	Preferred?
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO1)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO1)>	Yes

Select the **Ok** button when you have completed entering all the server data.

Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

4	<div><div></div><div>PRIMARY NOAM VIP GUI: Export the Initial Configuration</div></div>	<div>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers.</div> <div>From the GUI screen, select the DR-NOAM server and then select Export to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</div> <div><div>Insert</div><div>Edit</div><div>Delete</div><div>Export</div><div>Report</div></div>																		
5	<div><div></div><div>PMAC: Exchange SSH keys between PMAC and DR-NOAM server</div></div>	<div>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the first NOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to Main Menu -> Software -> Software Inventory.</div> <div><table><tr><td>RMS: Jetta-A</td><td>192.168.1.17</td><td>Jetta-NO-1</td><td>TPD (x86_64)</td><td>7.0.0.0-86.14.0</td><td>DSR</td><td>7.1.0.0-71.11.0</td><td></td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Guest: Jetta-NO-A</td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td></tr></table></div> <div>Note the IP address for the first DR-NOAM server.</div> <div>Login to the PMAC terminal as the admusr.</div> <div>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the admusr user, exchange SSH keys for admusr between the PMAC and the 1st DR-NOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the NOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the admusr user of the NOAM server.</div> <div><div>\$ keyexchange admusr@<DR-NO1_Control_IP Address></div></div>	RMS: Jetta-A	192.168.1.17	Jetta-NO-1	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.0.0-86.14.0	DSR	7.1.0.0-71.11.0			Guest: Jetta-NO-A								
RMS: Jetta-A	192.168.1.17	Jetta-NO-1	TPD (x86_64)	7.0.0.0-86.14.0	DSR	7.1.0.0-71.11.0														
Guest: Jetta-NO-A																				
6	<div><div></div><div>NOAM VIP: Exchange SSH keys between NOAM and PMAC at the DR site.</div></div>	<div>From a terminal window connection on the NOAMP VIP as the admusr.</div> <div>Exchange SSH keys for admusr between the NOAM and the DR NO's PMAC using the keyexchange utility.</div> <div><div>\$ keyexchange admusr@<DR-NO1_Site_PMAC_Mgmt_IP Address></div></div> <div>When prompted for the password, enter the appropriate password for admusr on the PMAC server.</div>																		


Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Primary NOAM: Copy Configuration File to 1st DR-NOAM Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the primary NOAM as the admusr user.</p> <p>Use the awpushcfg utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt directory on the primary NOAM to the 1st DR-NOAM server, using the Control network IP address for the DR-NOAM server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like “TKLCConfigData.<Hostname>.sh”.</p> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the local control network address from the PMAC. • Username: Use admusr • Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the 2nd NOAM server). • Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in step 3
<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>1st DR-NOAM Server: Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the 1st DR-NOAM iLO from the OA. (Use the procedure in Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access).</p> <p>Login as the admusr user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named “TKLCConfigData.sh” in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>

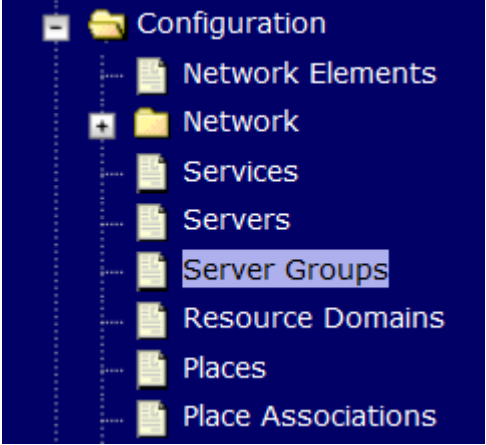
Procedure 14 NOAM Configuration for DR Site (Optional)

9	<div><div></div><div>1st DR-NOAM: Configure Networking for Dedicated NetBackup Interface (Optional)</div></div>	<div><p>Note: You will only execute this step if your DR-NOAM is using a dedicated Ethernet interface for NetBackup.</p><p>Obtain a terminal window to the 1st DR-NOAM server, logging in as the <i>admusr</i> user.</p><div><pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm set --device=netbackup --type=Ethernet --onboot=yes --address=<NO1_NetBackup_IP_Address> --netmask=<NO1_NetBackup_NetMask></pre></div><div><pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add --route=net --device=netbackup --address=<NO1_NetBackup_Network_ID> --netmask=<NO1_NetBackup_NetMask> --gateway=<NO1_NetBackup_Gateway_IP_Address></pre></div></div>				
10	<div><div></div><div>1st DR-NOAM Server: Verify Server Health</div></div>	<div><p>Execute the following command on the 1st DR-NOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p><div><pre>\$ sudo syscheck</pre><pre>Running modules in class hardware...OK</pre><pre>Running modules in class disk...OK</pre><pre>Running modules in class net...OK</pre><pre>Running modules in class system...OK</pre><pre>Running modules in class proc...OK</pre><pre>LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre></div></div>				
11	<div><div></div><div>Repeat for 2nd DR NOAM Server</div></div>	<div><p>Repeat Steps 3 through 13 to configure 2nd DR-NOAM Server. When inserting the 2nd DR-NOAM server, change the NTP server address to the following:</p><table><tr><th>NTP Server</th><th>Preferred?</th></tr><tr><td><TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)></td><td>Yes</td></tr></table></div>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)>	Yes
NTP Server	Preferred?					
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(DR-NO2)/ TVOE_Mgmt_IP_Address(DR-NO2)>	Yes					

Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to pair the DR-NOAM site.</p> <p>Prerequisite: Installation for DR-NOAM Site complete</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Primary NOAM VIP GUI: Login</p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the primary NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the primary NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p><code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div>  </div>

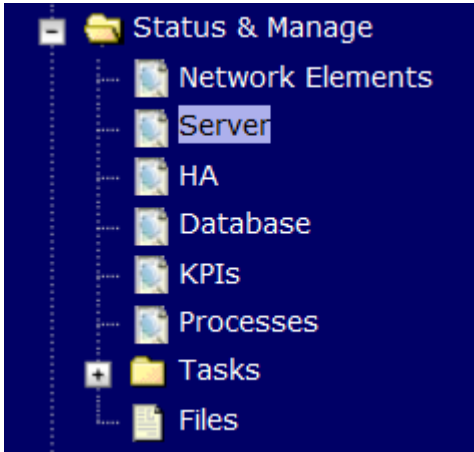
Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Primary NOAM VIP GUI: Enter DR-NOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Server Groups</p>  <p>Select Insert and fill the following fields:</p> <div> <input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Server Group Name: <Enter Server Group Name> • Level: A • Parent : None • Function: DSR (Active/Standby Pair) • WAN Replication Connection Count: Use Default Value <p>Select OK when all fields are filled in.</p>												
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Primary NOAM VIP GUI: Update Server Group</p>	<p>Select the Server Group that was created in the previous step, and click on Edit.</p> <div> <input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </div> <p>The user will be presented with the Server Groups [Edit] screen</p> <p>Check the checkbox labeled Include in SG for both DR-NOAM Servers as shown below and click on Apply</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">deaDR_CSLAB_ATT</th></tr> <tr> <th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>deaNO-ChaNC-A</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> <tr> <td>deaNO-ChaNC-B</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	deaDR_CSLAB_ATT			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	deaNO-ChaNC-A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	deaNO-ChaNC-B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
deaDR_CSLAB_ATT														
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role												
deaNO-ChaNC-A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												
deaNO-ChaNC-B	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												

Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)


4	<div><div></div></div> <div>Primary NOAM VIP GUI: Add DR-NOAM VIP</div>	<p>Click the Add dialogue button for the VIP Address and enter an IP Address for the VIP as shown below</p> <div><div>VIP Address</div><div><div>10.250.55.163</div><div>Add</div><div>Remove</div></div></div> <p>Then click the Apply dialogue button. Verify that the banner information message states Data committed.</p> <div><div>Ok</div><div>Apply</div><div>Cancel</div></div>																																																						
5	<div><div></div></div> <div>Primary NOAM VIP GUI: Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear</div>	<p>Wait for the alarm Remote Database re-initialization in progress to be cleared before proceeding.</p> <p>Navigate to Main menu->Alarms & Events->View Active</p> <p>Main Menu: Alarms & Events -> View History (Filtered)</p> <div><div>Filter</div><div>Tasks</div><div>Fri Mar 20</div></div> <table><tr><th>Seq #</th><th>Event ID</th><th>Timestamp</th><th>Severity</th><th>Product</th><th>Process</th><th>NE</th><th>Server</th><th>Type</th></tr><tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Event Text</td><td colspan="6">Additional Info</td></tr><tr><td>414</td><td>10200</td><td>2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT</td><td>CLEAR</td><td>...</td><td>apwSoapServer</td><td>Compass_NO</td><td>Compass-NOA</td><td>CFG</td></tr><tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td><td colspan="6">Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed</td></tr><tr><td>413</td><td>10200</td><td>2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT</td><td>MINOR</td><td>...</td><td>apwSoapServer</td><td>Compass_NO</td><td>Compass-NOA</td><td>CFG</td></tr><tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td><td colspan="6">Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td></tr></table>	Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type		Event Text		Additional Info						414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG		Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed						413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG		Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Remote Database re-initialization in progress					
Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type																																																
	Event Text		Additional Info																																																					
414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																																
	Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed																																																					
413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																																
	Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Remote Database re-initialization in progress																																																					

Procedure 15 Pairing for DR-NOAM site (Optional)

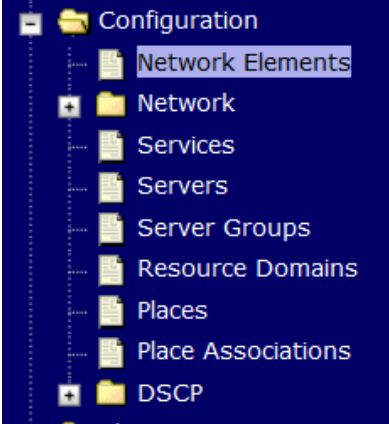
6	<div><div></div><div>Primary NOAM VIP GUI: Restart 1st DR-NOAM Server</div></div>	<div><div>From the NOAM GUI, select the Main menu -> Status & Manage -> Server menu.</div><div></div><div>Select the 1st DR-NOAM server. Select the Restart button.</div><div><div><div>Stop</div><div>Restart</div><div>Reboot</div><div>NTP Sync</div><div>Report</div></div></div><div>Answer OK to the confirmation popup.</div><div><div>Are you sure you wish to restart application software on the following server(s)? Jetta-NO-2</div><div><div>OK</div><div>Cancel</div></div></div><div>Wait for restart to complete. Wait approximately 3-5 minutes before proceeding.</div></div>																																								
7	<div><div></div><div>Primary NOAM VIP GUI :Restart the application on the 2nd DR-NOAM Server</div></div>	<div><div>Repeat Steps 6, but this time selecting 2nd DR-NOAM Server.</div></div>																																								
8	<div><div></div><div>DR-NOAM: Expected Alarm (DSR 7.1)</div></div>	<div><div>For DSR 7.1, the following alarm is expected to be present on the DR-NOAM:</div><div>HA Service Start Failure:</div><div><table><tr><th>Seq #</th><th>Event ID</th><th>Timestamp</th><th>Severity</th><th>Product</th><th>Process</th><th>NE</th><th>Server</th><th>Type</th><th>Instance</th></tr><tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Alarm Text</td><td colspan="7">Additional Info</td></tr><tr><td>4929</td><td>31225</td><td>2015-07-17 17:02:33.587 EDT</td><td>MAJOR</td><td>Platform</td><td>cmha</td><td>NO_KIKat</td><td>EVO-DRNO-1</td><td>HA</td><td>DSROAM_Proc</td></tr><tr><td></td><td colspan="2">HA Service Start Failure</td><td colspan="7">GN_WARNING/WRN Unregistered required subResources(0) ** [9464:HaResource.c... More...</td></tr></table></div><div>Note: This alarm is only cosmetic and not service affecting.</div></div>	Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type	Instance		Alarm Text		Additional Info							4929	31225	2015-07-17 17:02:33.587 EDT	MAJOR	Platform	cmha	NO_KIKat	EVO-DRNO-1	HA	DSROAM_Proc		HA Service Start Failure		GN_WARNING/WRN Unregistered required subResources(0) ** [9464:HaResource.c... More...						
Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type	Instance																																	
	Alarm Text		Additional Info																																							
4929	31225	2015-07-17 17:02:33.587 EDT	MAJOR	Platform	cmha	NO_KIKat	EVO-DRNO-1	HA	DSROAM_Proc																																	
	HA Service Start Failure		GN_WARNING/WRN Unregistered required subResources(0) ** [9464:HaResource.c... More...																																							

4.8 Application Configuration: SOAMs

Procedure 16 Configure SOAM NE

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM Network Element</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 


Procedure 16 Configure SOAM NE

<div>2</div> <div></div>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Create the SOAM Network Element using an XML File</p>	<p>Make sure to have an SOAM Network Element XML file available on the PC that is running the web browser. The SOAM Network Element XML file is similar to what was created and used in Procedure 9, but defines the SOAM “Network Element”.</p> <p>Refer to Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles for a sample Network Element xml file</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu->Configuration->Network Elements</p>  <p>Select the Browse button, and enter the path and name of the SOAM network XML file.</p> <p>Select the Upload File button to upload the XML file and configure the SOAM Network Element.</p> <p>To create a new Network Element, upload a valid configuration file:</p> <div><div>Browse...</div><div>No file selected.</div><div>Upload File</div></div> <div><div>Insert</div><div>Delete</div><div>Export</div><div>Report</div></div>
--------------------------	---	--

Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

<div>S T E P #</div>	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
<div>1<div></div></div>	<div>Exchange SSH keys between SOAM site's local PMAC and the SOAM Server</div>	<p>Use the PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the server that is to be the SOAM server. From the PMAC GUI, navigate to Main Menu -> Software -> Software Inventory.</p> <div><div>Enc:9102 Bay:1F Guest:DSR SOAM_A</div><div>192.168.1.246</div><div>Compass-SOA</div><div>TPD (x86_64)</div><div>7.0.0.0-86.14.0</div><div>DSR</div></div> <p>Note the IP address for the SOAM server.</p> <p>Login to the PMAC terminal as the admusr.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the PMAC as the admusr user, exchange SSH keys for admusr between the PMAC and the SOAM server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the SOAM server. When prompted for the password, enter the password for the admusr user of the NOAM server.</p> <div><pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@<SO1_Control_IP Address></pre></div>
<div>2<div></div></div>	<div>Exchange SSH keys between NOAM and PMAC at the SOAM site (If necessary)</div>	<p>Note: If this SOAM shares the same PMAC as the NOAM, then you can skip this step.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the NOAM VIP, as the admusr, exchange SSH keys for admusr between the NOAM and the PMAC for this SOAM site using the keyexchange utility.</p> <p>When prompted for the password, enter the admusr password for the PMAC server.</p> <div><pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@<SO1_Site_PMAC_Mgmt_IP_Address></pre></div>

Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><p><code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></p></div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> <div><p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p><p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p><p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p></div>
-------------------------------	--------------------------------	--

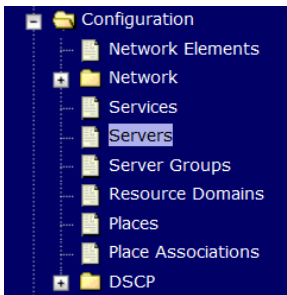
Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

4

☐

NOAM VIP
GUI: Insert
the 1st SOAM
server

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers**.



Select the **Insert** button to insert the 1st SOAM server into servers table (the first or server).

Attribute	Value	Description
Hostname	SOAM-A *	Unique name for 20-character string minus sign. Must be alphanumeric.
Role	SYSTEM OAM *	Select the function
Hardware Profile	DSR TVOE Guest	Hardware profile
Network Element Name	HPC6_90006 *	Select the network element
Location		Location description string. Valid value

Fill in the fields as follows:

Hostname: <Hostname>

Role: **SYSTEM OAM**

System ID: <Site System ID>

Hardware Profile: **DSR TVOE Guest**

Network Element Name: [Choose NE from Drop Down Box]

The network interface fields will now become available with selection choices based on the chosen hardware profile and network element

Interfaces:		
Network	IP Address	Interface
INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	10.240.84.155	xmi <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)
INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	10.240.85.10	imi <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)

Ok Apply Cancel

Fill in the server IP addresses for the XMI network. Select **xmi** for the interface. **Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.**

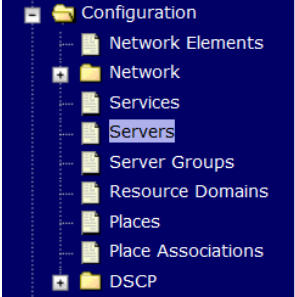
Fill in the server IP addresses for the IMI network. Select **imi** for the interface. **Leave the "VLAN" checkbox unchecked.**

Next, add the following NTP servers:

NTP Server	Preferred?
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes

Select the **Ok** button when you have completed entering all the server data.

Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Export the Initial Configuration</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers.</p>  <p>From the GUI screen, select the NOAM server and then select Export to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</p> <p> <input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Export"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </p>
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP: Copy Configuration File to 1st SOAM Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the NOAM VIP as the admusr user.</p> <p>Use the awpushcfg utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the <code>/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt</code> directory on the NOAM to the 1st SOAM server, using the Control network IP address for the 1st SOAM server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like <code>TKLCConfigData.<hostname>.sh</code>.</p> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the local control network address from the PMAC. • Username: Use admusr • Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the 1st SOAM server). • Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in step 3


Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

7 <div></div>	1st SOAM Server: Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Server	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the 1st SOAM server console by establishing an ssh session from the NOAM VIP terminal console.</p> <div><pre>\$ ssh admusr@<SO1_Control_IP></pre></div> <p>Login as the <i>admusr</i> user.</p> <p>The automatic configuration daemon will look for the file named “<i>TKLCConfigData.sh</i>” in the /var/tmp directory, implement the configuration in the file, and then prompt the user to reboot the server.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre><p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p><pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre></div> <p>Now Reboot the Server:</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre></div> <p>Wait for the server to reboot</p>				
8 <div></div>	1st SOAM Server: Verify Server Health	<p>Execute the following command on the 1st SOAM server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo syscheck</pre><pre>Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre></div>				
9 <div></div>	Insert and Configure the 2nd SOAM server	<p>Repeat this procedure to insert and configure the 2nd SOAM server, with the exception of the NTP server, which should be configured as so:</p> <table><tr><th>NTP Server</th><th>Preferred?</th></tr><tr><td><TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)></td><td>Yes</td></tr></table> <p>Instead of data for the 1st SOAM Server, insert the network data for the 2nd SOAM server, transfer the <i>TKLCConfigData</i> file to the 2nd SOAM server, and reboot the 2nd SOAM server when prompted at a terminal window.</p>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	Yes
NTP Server	Preferred?					
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	Yes					

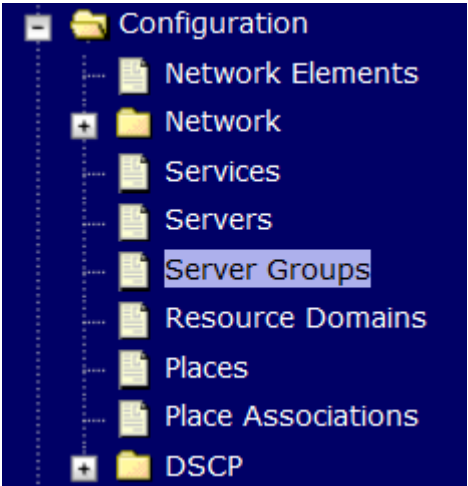

Procedure 17 Configure the SOAM Servers

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	Install Netbackup Client Software on SOAMs (Optional)	If you are using NetBackup at this site, then execute Procedure 13 again to install the NetBackup Client on all SOAM servers.
--------------------------------	--	--

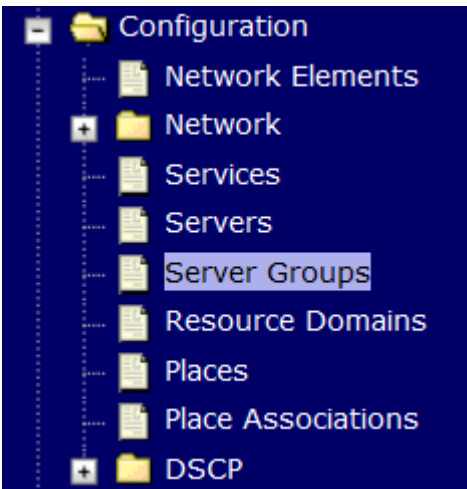
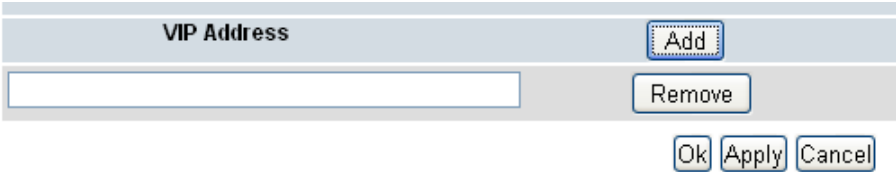
Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SOAM Server Group</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p><code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 

Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

<div>2</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Enter SOAM Server Group Data</p>	<p>After approximately 5 minutes for the 2nd SOAM server to reboot,</p> <p>Navigate to the GUI Main Menu->Configuration->Server Groups</p> <div>A screenshot of a GUI configuration menu. The menu is titled 'Configuration' and lists several options: Network Elements, Network, Services, Servers, Server Groups (highlighted with a blue selection bar), Resource Domains, Places, Place Associations, and DSCP. Each option is preceded by a small icon representing a folder or document.</div> <p>Select Insert</p> <div>Four buttons are displayed in a row: 'Insert', 'Edit', 'Delete', and 'Report'. Each button has a light gray background and a thin black border.</div> <p>Add the SOAM Server Group name along with the values for the following fields:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Name: <Hostname>• Level: B• Parent [Select the NOAM Server Group]• Function: DSR (Active/Standby Pair)• WAN Replication Connection Count: Use Default Value <p>Select OK when all fields are filled.</p> <p>Note: For DSR mated sites, repeat this step for additional SOAM server groups where the preferred SOAM spares may be entered prior to the active/Standby SOAMs.</p>
--	---	--

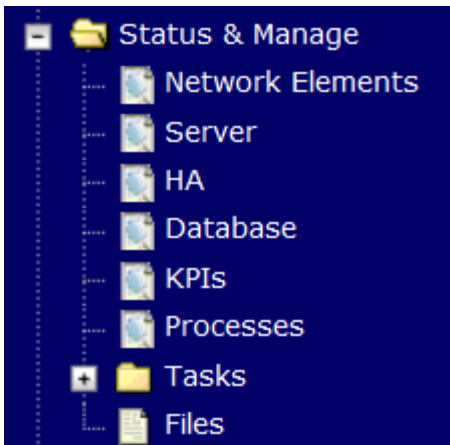
Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP</p> <p>GUI: Edit the SOAM Server Group and add VIP</p>	<p>From the GUI Main Menu->Configuration->Server Groups</p>  <p>Select the new SOAM server group, and then select Edit.</p> <p> <input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/> </p> <p>Add both SOAM servers to the Server Group Primary Site by clicking the Include in SG checkbox.</p> <p>Do not check any of the Preferred Spare checkboxes.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="3">SO_900060102</th></tr> <tr> <th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>RMSSOA</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> <tr> <td>RMSOB</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Click Apply.</p> <p>Add a SOAM VIP by click on Add. Fill in the VIP Address and press Ok as shown below:</p> 	SO_900060102			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	RMSSOA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	RMSOB	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
SO_900060102														
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role												
RMSSOA	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												
RMSOB	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												

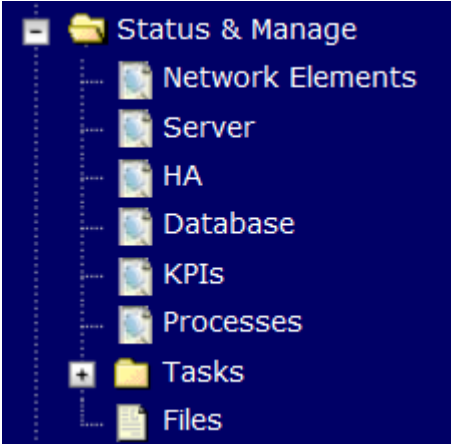
Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

4	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> <div>Prepare Feature Activation where Preferred Spares are Already Present (Optional-DSR 7.0 Only)</div>	<div>In mated DSR configurations (DSR 7.0 ONLY), For DSR 7.1, skip this step.</div> <div>Where a preferred spare is already present upon entering the Active and Standby SOAM servers. Execute Steps 2-4 from Appendix K: Multi-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0) Otherwise, skip this step.</div>															
5	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> <div>NOAM VIP GUI: Edit the SOAM Server Group and add Preferred Spares for Site Redundancy (Optional)</div>	<div>If the Two Site Redundancy feature is wanted for the SOAM Server Group, add a SOAM server that is located in its Server Group Secondary Site by clicking the Include in SG checkbox. Also check the Preferred Spare checkbox.</div> <table><tr><th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr><tr><td>LabF123SOsp1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr></table> <div>If the Three Site Redundancy feature is wanted for the SOAM Server Group, add an additional SOAM server that is located in its Server Group Tertiary Site by clicking the Include in SG checkbox. Also check the Preferred Spare checkbox.</div> <div>Note: The Preferred Spare servers must be <i>Server Group Secondary & Tertiary Sites</i>. There should be servers from three separate sites (locations).</div> <table><tr><th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr><tr><td>LabF123SOsp1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr><tr><td>LabF123SOsp2</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr></table> <div>For more information about Server Group Secondary Site, Tertiary Site or Site Redundancy, see the 1.4 Terminology section.</div>	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	LabF123SOsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	LabF123SOsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	LabF123SOsp2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role															
LabF123SOsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare															
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role															
LabF123SOsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare															
LabF123SOsp2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare															
6	<div><input type="checkbox"/></div> <div>NOAM VIP GUI: Edit the SOAM Server Group and add additional SOAM VIPs (Optional)</div>	<div>Add additional SOAM VIPs by click on Add. Fill in the “VIP Address” and press Ok as shown below.</div> <div>Note: Additional SOAM VIPs only apply to SOAM Server Groups with Preferred Spare SOAMs.</div> <div><table><tr><th>VIP Address</th><td><div><input type="text"/></div></td><td><div>Add</div></td></tr><tr><td></td><td><div>Remove</div></td><td></td></tr></table><div><div>Ok</div><div>Apply</div><div>Cancel</div></div></div>	VIP Address	<div><input type="text"/></div>	<div>Add</div>		<div>Remove</div>										
VIP Address	<div><input type="text"/></div>	<div>Add</div>															
	<div>Remove</div>																

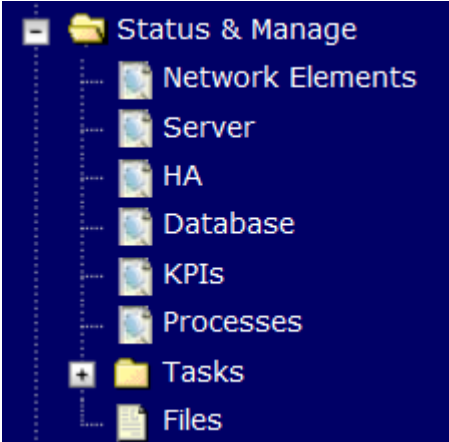
Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

7	<div><div></div><div>NOAM VIP GUI: Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear</div></div>	<div><div>Wait for the alarm Remote Database re-initialization in progress to be cleared before proceeding.</div><div>Navigate to Main menu->Alarms & Events->View Active</div><div>Main Menu: Alarms & Events -> View History (Filtered)</div><div><div><div>Filter</div><div>Tasks</div></div><div><table><thead><tr><th>Seq #</th><th>Event ID</th><th>Timestamp</th><th>Severity</th><th>Product</th><th>Process</th><th>NE</th><th>Server</th><th>Type</th></tr><tr><th></th><th colspan="2">Event Text</th><th colspan="6">Additional Info</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>414</td><td>10200</td><td>2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT</td><td>CLEAR</td><td>...</td><td>apwSoapServer</td><td>Compass_NO</td><td>Compass-NOA</td><td>CFG</td></tr><tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td><td colspan="6">Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed</td></tr><tr><td>413</td><td>10200</td><td>2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT</td><td>MINOR</td><td>...</td><td>apwSoapServer</td><td>Compass_NO</td><td>Compass-NOA</td><td>CFG</td></tr><tr><td></td><td colspan="2">Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td><td colspan="6">Remote Database re-initialization in progress</td></tr></tbody></table></div></div></div>	Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type		Event Text		Additional Info						414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG		Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed						413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG		Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Remote Database re-initialization in progress					
Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type																																																
	Event Text		Additional Info																																																					
414	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																																
	Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed																																																					
413	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG																																																
	Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Remote Database re-initialization in progress																																																					
8	<div><div></div><div>NOAM VIP GUI: Restart 1st SOAM server</div></div>	<div><div>From the NOAMP GUI, select Main menu->Status & Manage->Server.</div><div></div><div><div>Select the 1st SOAM server.</div><div>Select the Restart button. Answer OK to the confirmation popup. Wait for restart to complete.</div><div><div>Insert</div><div>Edit</div><div>Delete</div><div>Report</div></div></div></div>																																																						

Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

9 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Restart 2 nd SOAM server	<p>From the NOAMP GUI, select Main menu->Status & Manage->Server.</p>  <p>Select the 2nd SOAM server.</p> <p>Select the Restart button. Answer OK to the confirmation popup. Wait for restart to complete.</p> <div><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></div>
-------------------------------	--	--

Procedure 18 Configure the SOAM Server Group

10 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Restart all Preferred Spare SOAM Servers	<p>If additional Preferred Spare servers are not configured for <i>Secondary or Tertiary Sites</i>, this step can be skipped.</p> <p>If additional Preferred Spare servers are configured for <i>Secondary and/or Tertiary Sites</i>, continuing in the Main menu->Status & Manage->Server</p>  <p>Select the all Preferred Spare SOAM servers.</p> <p>Select the Restart button. Answer OK to the confirmation popup.</p> <div><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></div>
--------------------------------	---	---

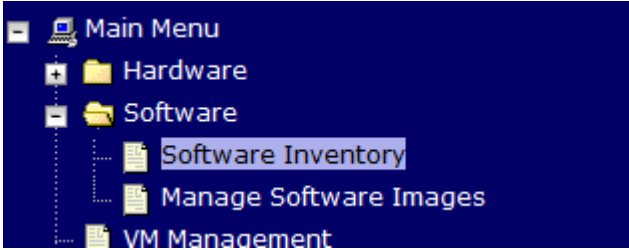
4.9 Application Configuration: Activate PCA (PCA Only)

Procedure 19 Activate PCA (PCA Only)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to activate PCA</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	(PCA Only) Activate PCA Feature	<p>If you are installing PCA, execute the applicable procedures (Added SOAM site activation or complete system activation) within Appendix A of [2] (DSR 7.0) and [28] (DSR 7.1) to activate PCA.</p> <p>Note: If not all SOAM sites are ready at this point, then you should repeat activation for each *new* SOAM site that comes online.</p>

4.10 Application Configuration: MPs

Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure an MP Blade Servers (IPFE, SBR, SS7-MP, DA-MP)</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>PMAC: Exchange SSH keys between MP site's local PMAC and the MP server</p> <p>Use the MP site's PMAC GUI to determine the Control Network IP address of the blade server that is to be an MP server. From the MP site's PMAC GUI, navigate to Main Menu -> Software -> Software Inventory.</p>  <p>Enc:9102 Bay:3F 192.168.1.239 Compass-DAMP-03</p> <p>Note the IP address for an MP server.</p> <p>Login to the MP site's PMAC terminal as the admusr.</p> <p>From a terminal window connection on the MP site's PMAC as the admusr.</p> <p>Exchange SSH keys for admusr between the PMAC and the MP blade server using the keyexchange utility, using the Control network IP address for the MP blade server.</p> <pre>\$ keyexchange admusr@<MP_Control_Blade_IP_Address></pre> <p>When prompted for the password, enter the password for the admusr user of the MP server.</p>

Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

<div>2</div> <div></div>	<div>NOAM VIP</div> <div>GUI: Login</div>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XMI IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><div>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></div></div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div><div><div>ORACLE®</div><div>Oracle System Login</div><div>Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT</div><div><div><div>Log In</div><div>Enter your username and password to log in</div><div><div>Username: <input type="text" value="guiadmin"/></div><div>Password: <input type="password" value="••••••"/></div><div><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</div><div>Log In</div></div></div><div>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</div><div>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</div><div>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</div></div></div></div>
--------------------------	---	---

Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

3

☐

NOAM VIP GUI: Insert the MP server (Part 1)

Before creating the MP blade server, first identify the hardware profile

Hardware Profile: In the following step, you will select the profile that matches your MP physical hardware and enclosure networking environment.

Note: You must go through the process of identifying the enclosure switches, mezzanine cards and Ethernet interfaces of the network prior and blade(s) used before selecting the profile.

Profile Name	Blade Size	Multiple Pairs of Enc. Switches?	Bonded Signaling Interfaces?
BL460 HP c-Class Blade	Half	No	Yes
BL620 HP c-Class Blade	Full	No	Yes
L2D3 BL460 HP c-Class Blade	Half	Yes	Yes
L2D3 BL620 HP c-Class Blade	Full	Yes	Yes
L2D3 BL620 HP c-Class blade (Unbonded Sig)	Full	Yes	No
DSR TVOE Guest	N/A (Virtual)	N/A	N/A

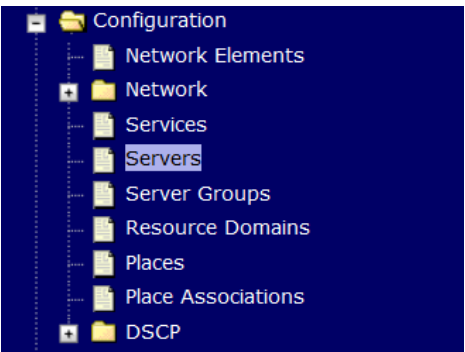
Note: If none of the above profiles properly describe your MP server blade, then you will have to create your own in a text editor (See Figure 7 of Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles) and copy it into the /var/TKLC/appworks/profiles/ directory of the active NOAMP server, the standby NOAMP server, and both the DR NOAM servers (if applicable).

Note: After transferring the above file, set the proper file permission by executing the following command:

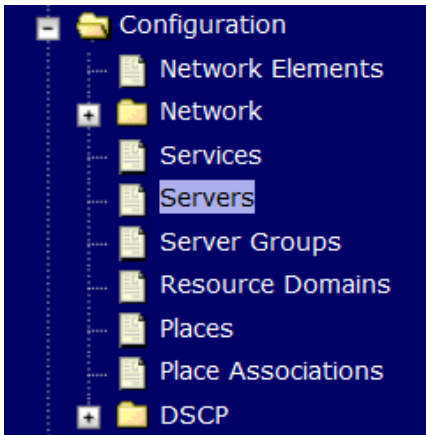
```
$ sudo chmod 777 /var/TKLC/appworks/profiles/<profile name>
```

Make note of the profile used here, as it will be used in server creation in the following step.

Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Insert the MP server (Part 2)</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu->Configuration->Servers</p>  <p>Select the Insert button to insert the new MP server into servers table.</p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Export"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Fill out the following values:</p> <p>Hostname: <Hostname> Role: MP Network Element: [Choose Network Element]</p> <p>Hardware Profile: Select the profile that matches your MP physical hardware and enclosure networking environment from step 3.</p> <p>Location: <enter an optional location description></p> <p>The interface configuration form will now appear.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Network</th> <th>IP Address</th> <th>Interface</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)</td> <td><input type="text" value="10.240.84.177"/></td> <td>bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)</td> <td><input type="text" value="10.240.85.16"/></td> <td>bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> <p>For the XMI network, enter the MP's XMI IP address. Select the correct bond or interface. If your XMI network uses VLAN tagging, then select the VLAN checkbox. If your XMI network does NOT use VLAN tagging, then do NOT select the VLAN checkbox.</p> <p>For the IMI network, enter the MP's IMI IP address. Select the proper bond or interface, and select the VLAN checkbox.</p> <p>Optional: If dedicated network for SBR replication will be defined, complete procedure 24, then assign the interface for that network here.</p>	Network	IP Address	Interface	INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	<input type="text" value="10.240.84.177"/>	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)	INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	<input type="text" value="10.240.85.16"/>	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)
Network	IP Address	Interface									
INTERNALXMI (10.240.84.128/25)	<input type="text" value="10.240.84.177"/>	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (3)									
INTERNALIMI (10.240.85.0/26)	<input type="text" value="10.240.85.16"/>	bond0 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> VLAN (4)									

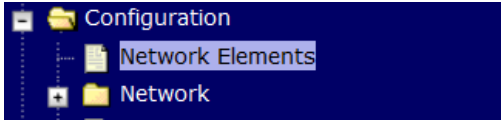
Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

5	<div><div></div><div>NOAM VIP GUI: Insert the MP server (Part 3)</div></div>	<div>Next, add the following NTP servers:</div> <table><thead><tr><th>NTP Server</th><th>Preferred?</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td><TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)></td><td>Yes</td></tr><tr><td><TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)></td><td>No</td></tr><tr><td><MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address></td><td>No</td></tr></tbody></table> <div>Note: For multiple enclosure deployments, prefer the SOAM TVOE Host that is located in the same enclosure as the MP Server.</div> <div>Select OK when all fields are filled in to finish MP server insertion.</div>	NTP Server	Preferred?	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes	<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	No	<MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address>	No
NTP Server	Preferred?									
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO1)>	Yes									
<TVOE_XMI_IP_Address(SO2)>	No									
<MP_Site_PMAC_TVOE_IP_Address>	No									
6	<div><div></div><div>NOAM VIP GUI: Export the Configuration</div></div>	<div>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Servers.</div> <div></div> <div>From the GUI screen, select the MP server and then select Export to generate the initial configuration data for that server.</div> <div><div>Insert</div><div>Edit</div><div>Delete</div><div>Export</div><div>Report</div></div>								

Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP: Copy Configuration File to MP Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal session to the NOAM VIP as the admusr user.</p> <p>Use the awpushcfg utility to copy the configuration file created in the previous step from the /var/TKLC/db/filemgmt directory on the NOAM to the MP server, using the Control network IP address for the MP server.</p> <p>The configuration file will have a filename like "TKLCConfigData.<hostname>.sh".</p> <pre>\$ sudo awpushcfg</pre> <p>The awpushcfg utility is interactive, so the user will be prompted for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IP address of the local PMAC server: Use the local control network address from the PMAC. • Username: Use admusr • Control network IP address for the target server: In this case, enter the control IP for the MP server). • Hostname of the target server: Enter the server name configured in step 1
<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>MP Server: Verify awpushcfg was called and Reboot the Configured Server</p>	<p>Obtain a terminal window connection on the MP server console by establishing an ssh session from the NOAM VIP terminal console.</p> <pre>\$ ssh admusr@<MP_Control_IP></pre> <p>Login as the admusr user.</p> <p>Verify awpushcfg was called by checking the following file:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /var/TKLC/appw/logs/Process/install.log</pre> <p>Verify the following message is displayed:</p> <pre>[SUCCESS] script completed successfully!</pre> <p>Reboot the sever:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre> <p>Proceed to the next step once the Server finished rebooting, The server is done rebooting once the login prompt is displayed.</p>

Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>MP Server: Verify Server Health</p>	<p>After the reboot, login as admusr.</p> <p>Execute the following command as super-user on the server and make sure that no errors are returned:</p> <pre>\$ sudo syscheck Running modules in class hardware...OK Running modules in class disk...OK Running modules in class net...OK Running modules in class system...OK Running modules in class proc...OK LOG LOCATION: /var/TKLC/log/syscheck/fail_log</pre>
<p>10</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>MP Server: Delete Auto-Configured Default Route on MP and Replace it with a Network Route via the XMI Network-Part1 (Optional)</p>	<p>Note: THIS STEP IS OPTIONAL AND SHOULD ONLY BE EXECUTED IF YOU PLAN TO CONFIGURE A DEFAULT ROUTE ON YOUR MP THAT USES A SIGNALING (XSI) NETWORK INSTEAD OF THE XMI NETWORK.</p> <p>(Not executing this step will mean that a default route will not be configurable on this MP and you will have to create separate network routes for each signaling network destination.)</p> <p>Using the iLO facility, log into the MP as the <i>admusr</i> user. (Alternatively, you can log into the site's PMAC then SSH to the MP's control address.)</p> <p>Determine <XMI_Gateway_IP> from your SO site network element info.</p> <p>Gather the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <NO_XMI_Network_Address> • <NO_XMI_Network_Netmask> • <DR_NO_XMI_Network_Address> • <DR_NO_XMI_Network_Netmask> • <TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Address> • <TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Netmask> <p>Note: You can either consult the XML files you imported earlier, or go to the NO GUI and view these values from the Main Menu -> Configuration -> Network Elements screen.</p>  <p>Proceed to the next step to modify the default routes on the MP servers.</p>

Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

<p>11</p> <p>□</p>	<p>MP Server: Delete Auto-Configured Default Route on MP and Replace it with a Network Route via the XMI Network-Part2 (Optional)</p>	<p>After gathering the network information from step 10, proceed with modifying the default routes on the MP server.</p> <p>Establish a connection to the MP server, login as admusr.</p> <p>Create network routes to the NO's XMI(OAM) network:</p> <p>Note: If your NOAM XMI network is exactly the same as your MP XMI network, then you should skip this command and only configure the DR NO route.</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=<NO_Site_Network_ID> --netmask=<NO_Site_Network_Netmask> --gateway=<MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address> --device=<MP_XMI_Interface> Route to <MP_XMI_Interface> added.</pre> <p>Create network routes to the DR NO's XMI(OAM) network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=<DR-NO_Site_Network_ID> --netmask=<DR-NO_Site_Network_Netmask> --gateway=<MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address> --device=<MP_XMI_Interface> Route to <MP_XMI_Interface> added.</pre> <p>Create network routes to the Management Server TVOE XMI(OAM) network for NTP:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=net --address=<TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Address> --netmask=<TVOE_Mgmt_XMI_Network_Netmask> --gateway=<MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address> --device=<MP_XMI_Interface> Route to <MP_XMI_Interface> added.</pre> <p>(Optional) If Sending SNMP traps from individual servers, create host routes to customer SNMP trap destinations on the XMI network:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm add -route=host --address=<Customer_NMS_IP> --gateway=<MP_XMI_Gateway_IP_Address> --device=<MP_XMI_Interface> Route to <MP_XMI_Interface> added.</pre> <p>(Repeat for any existing customer NMS stations)</p> <p>Delete the existing default route:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/netAdm delete -route=default --gateway=<MP_XMI_Gateway_IP> --device=<MP_XMI_Interface> Route to <MP_XMI_Interface> removed.</pre>
--------------------	--	---

Procedure 20 Configure MP Blade Servers

12 <input type="checkbox"/>	MP Server: Verify connectivity	<p>After steps 10 and 11 have been executed, verify network connectivity.</p> <p>Establish a connection to the MP server, login as <i>admusr</i>.</p> <p>Ping active NO XMI IP address to verify connectivity:</p> <pre>\$ ping <ACTIVE_NO_XMI_IP_Address> PING 10.240.108.6 (10.240.108.6) 56(84) bytes of data. 64 bytes from 10.240.108.6: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.342 ms 64 bytes from 10.240.108.6: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.247 ms</pre> <p>(Optional) Ping Customer NMS Station(s):</p> <pre>\$ ping <Customer_NMS_IP> PING 172.4.116.8 (172.4.116.8) 56(84) bytes of data. 64 bytes from 172.4.116.8: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.342 ms 64 bytes from 172.4.116.8: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.247 ms</pre> <p>If you do not get a response, then verify your network configuration. If you continue to get failures then halt the installation and contact Oracle customer support.</p>
13 <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for remaining MP at all sites	<p>Repeat this entire procedure for all remaining MP blades.</p>

Procedure 21 Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA ONLY)

S T E P #	This procedure will provide the steps/reference to add "Places" in the POLICY AND CHARGING DRA Network. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS) , and ask for assistance.	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the XML IP address of the first NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div>  </div>

Procedure 21 Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA ONLY)

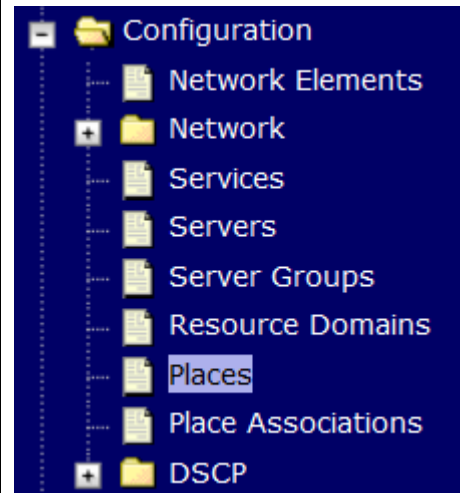
2



**NOAM VIP
GUI:**
Configure
Places

Establish a GUI session on the NOAMP by using the XMI VIP address. Login as user **guiadmin**.

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> Places**



Select the **Insert** button



Main Menu: Configuration -> Places [Insert]

Info ▼

Inserting a new Place

Place	Field	Value	Description
Place	Place Name	rtplabD	* Unique identifier used to label a Place. [D
	Parent	NONE ▼ *	The Parent of this Place
	Place Type	Site ▼ *	The Type of this Place

Place Name: <Site Name>

Parent: NONE

Place Type: Site

Repeat this step for each of the *PCA Places (Sites)* in the network.

See the **1.4 Terminology** section for more information on *Sites & Places*.

Procedure 21 Configure Places and Assign MP Servers to Places (PCA ONLY)

3

☐

NOAM VIP
GUI: Assign MP Servers To Places

Select the place configured in step 2, press the edit button.

InsertEditDeleteReport

For each place you have defined, choose the set of MP servers that will be assigned to those places.

Place	
Field	Value
Place Name	<input type="text" value="rtpLabC"/> *
Parent	<input type="text" value="NONE"/> *
Place Type	<input type="text" value="Site"/> *

Servers
LABCSONE ☐ labCe1b04pdra1

Check all the check boxes for **PCA DA-MP** and **SBR** servers that will be assigned to this place.

Repeat this step for all other DA-MP or SBR servers you wish to assign to places.

Note: All **PCA DA-MPs**, **SS7MPs** and **SBR MPs** must be added to the *Site Place* that corresponds to the physical location of the server.

See the **1.4 Terminology** section for more information on *Sites*.

Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure MP Server Groups</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><p>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></p></div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> <div></div>

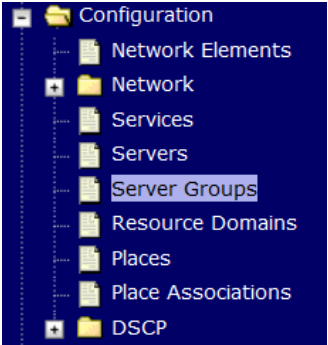
Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Determine Server Group Function	<p>Determine what server group function will be configured, make note the following configuration decisions.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Server Group Function</th><th>MPs Will Run</th><th>Redundancy Model</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DSR (multi-active cluster)</td><td>Diameter Relay and Application Services</td><td>Multiple MPs active Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td>DSR (active-standby pair)</td><td>Diameter Relay and Application Services</td><td>1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td>Session Binding Repository</td><td>Session Binding Repository Function</td><td>1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td>IP Load Balancer</td><td>IPFE application</td><td>1 Active MP Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td>Policy & Charging SBR</td><td>Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function</td><td>1 Active MP Per SG</td></tr> <tr> <td>SS7-IWF</td><td>MAP IWF Application</td><td>1 Active MP Per SG</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>For the CPA application: At least one MP Server Group with the “Session Binding Repository” function.</p> <p>For PCA application:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Online Charging function (only) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o At least one MP Server Group with the “Policy and Charging SBR” function must be configured o At least one MP Server Group with the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” function must be configured o MP Server Groups with the “IP Load Balancer” function (IPFE) are optional. - Policy DRA function <ul style="list-style-type: none"> o At least two MP Server Groups with the “Policy and Charging SBR” function must be configured. One will store Session data and one will store Binding data. o At least one MP Server Group with the “DSR (multi-active cluster)” function must be configured o MP Server Groups with the “IP Load Balancer” function (IPFE) are optional. <p>WAN Replication Connection Count:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For non-Policy and Charging SBR Server Groups: Default Value • For Policy and Charging Server Groups: 8 <p>For the PCA application, the following types of MP Server Groups must be configured:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - DA-MP (Function: DSR (multi-active cluster)) - SBR (Function: Policy and Charging SBR) - IPFE (Function: IP Load Balancer) – Optional) 	Server Group Function	MPs Will Run	Redundancy Model	DSR (multi-active cluster)	Diameter Relay and Application Services	Multiple MPs active Per SG	DSR (active-standby pair)	Diameter Relay and Application Services	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG	Session Binding Repository	Session Binding Repository Function	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG	IP Load Balancer	IPFE application	1 Active MP Per SG	Policy & Charging SBR	Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function	1 Active MP Per SG	SS7-IWF	MAP IWF Application	1 Active MP Per SG
Server Group Function	MPs Will Run	Redundancy Model																					
DSR (multi-active cluster)	Diameter Relay and Application Services	Multiple MPs active Per SG																					
DSR (active-standby pair)	Diameter Relay and Application Services	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG																					
Session Binding Repository	Session Binding Repository Function	1 Active MP and 1 Standby MP / Per SG																					
IP Load Balancer	IPFE application	1 Active MP Per SG																					
Policy & Charging SBR	Policy and Charging Session/or Policy Binding Function	1 Active MP Per SG																					
SS7-IWF	MAP IWF Application	1 Active MP Per SG																					

Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Enter MP Server Group Data</p>	<p>From the data collected from step 2, create the server group with the following:</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu ->Configuration ->Server Groups</p>  <p>Select Insert</p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Fill out the following fields:</p> <p>Server Group Name: <Server Group Name> Level: C Parent: [SOAMP Server Group That is Parent To this MP] Function: Select the Proper Function for this MP Server Group (Gathered in Step 2)</p> <p>Select OK when all fields are filled in.</p>
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Repeat For Additional Server Groups</p>	<p>Repeat Steps 2-3 for any remaining MP server groups you wish to create.</p> <p>For instance, if you are installing IPFE, you will need to create an IP Load Balancer server group.</p>

Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Edit the MP Server Groups to include MP blades.	<p>From the GUI, navigate to Main Menu->Configuration->Server Groups</p>  <p>Select a server group that you just created and then select Edit.</p> <p>Select the Network Element that represents the MP server group you wish to edit.</p> <p>Click the Include in SG box for every MP server that you wish to include in <i>this</i> server group. Leave other checkboxes blank.</p> <table border="1"><thead><tr><th colspan="3">HPC6_90006</th></tr><tr><th>Server</th><th>SG Inclusion</th><th>Preferred HA Role</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>MP-1</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr><tr><td>MP-2</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG</td><td><input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare</td></tr></tbody></table> <p>Note: Each IPFE and SS7MP server should be in its own server group.</p> <p>Select OK.</p>	HPC6_90006			Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role	MP-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare	MP-2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
HPC6_90006														
Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role												
MP-1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												
MP-2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare												

Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

6

NOAM VIP

GUI: [PCA ONLY]

Edit the MP Server Group and add Preferred Spares for Site Redundancy (Optional)

If Two Site Redundancy for the Policy and Charging SBR Server Group is wanted, add a MP server that is physically located in a separate site (location) to the Server Group by clicking the **Include in SG** checkbox and also check the **Preferred Spare** checkbox.

Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role
LabF123SBRsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare

If Three Site Redundancy for the SBR MP Server Group is wanted, add two SBR MP servers that are both physically located in separate sites (*location*) to the Server Group by clicking the **Include in SG** checkbox and also check the **Preferred Spare** checkbox for both servers.

Note: The **Preferred Spare** servers should be different sites from the original server and should not be in the same site. There should be servers from three separate sites (locations).

Server	SG Inclusion	Preferred HA Role
LabF123SBRsp1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare
LabF123SBRsp2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Include in SG	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Preferred Spare

For more information about Site Redundancy for Policy and Charging SBR Server Groups, see the **1.4 Terminology** section.

Select **OK** to save

7

NOAM VIP

GUI: Repeat For Additional Server Groups

Repeat Steps 5- 6 for any remaining MP server groups you need to edit.

8

NOAM VIP

GUI: Wait for Remote Database Alarm to Clear

Wait for the alarm **Remote Database re-initialization in progress** to be cleared before proceeding.

Navigate to **Main menu->Alarms & Events->View Active**

Main Menu: Alarms & Events -> View History (Filtered)

FilterTasksFri Mar 20

Seq #	Event ID	Timestamp	Severity	Product	Process	NE	Server	Type
414	Event Text		Additional Info					
	10200	2015-03-20 09:30:00.090 EDT	CLEAR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG
413	Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Cleared because DB Re-Init Completed					
	10200	2015-03-20 09:28:16.411 EDT	MINOR	...	apwSoapServer	Compass_NO	Compass-NOA	CFG
	Remote Database re-initialization in progress		Remote Database re-initialization in progress					

Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

<div>9</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	SOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><p><code>http://<Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></p></div> <p>Login to the SOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> <div></div>
--	----------------------------	--

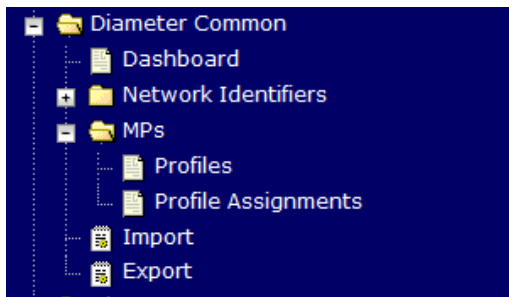
Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

10

☐

SOAM VIP GUI: Assign Profiles to DA-MPs from SOAM GUI.

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Diameter Common ->MPs -> Profiles Assignments**



Refer to the **DA-MP** section. (If the site has both DSR and MAP-IWF server groups, you will see both a DA-MP section and an SS7-MP section)

Main Menu: Diameter Common -> MPs -> Profile Assignments

DA-MP	MP Profile
ATT2-501180302-MP1	G7:Database
ATT2-501180304-MP2	G8:Database

For each MP, select the proper profile assignment based on the MP's hardware type and the function it will serve:

Profile Name	Description
G6:Relay	G6 DA-MP half height blade running relay application
G6:Database	G6 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. - FABR, RBAR)
G6:Session	G6 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. - CPA, PCA)
G8:Relay	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running the relay application
G8:Database	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)
G8:Session	G8/G9 DA-MP half height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)
G7:Relay	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running the relay application
G7:Database	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running a database application (e.g. FABR, RBAR)
G7:Session	G7 DA-MP Full height blade running a session application (e.g. CPA, PCA)

Note: If the DA-MPs at this site are configured for *Active/Standby* then there will be a single selection box visible that assigns profiles for all MPs.

When finished, press the **Assign** button

Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

11

SOAM VIP GUI: Assign Profiles to SS7-MPs.

Navigate to **Main Menu->Diameter->Configuration->MPs->Profiles Assignments**

Refer to the **SS7-MP** section. (If the site has both DSR and MAP-IWF server groups, you will see both a DA-MP section and an SS7-MP section)


SS7-MP	MP Profile	current value
SS7MP	G8:MD-IWF	This MP has not been assigned an MP Profile.

For each SS7 MP, select the proper profile assignment based on the SS7 MP's hardware type and the function it will serve:

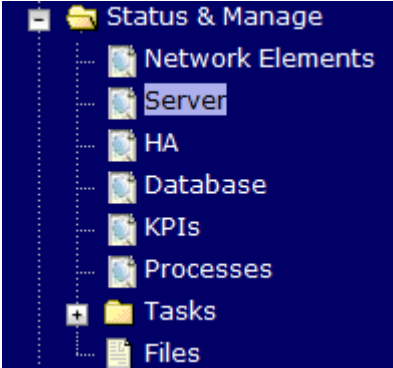
Profile Name	Description
G8:MD-IWF	HP BL460 Gen8/9 Running MAP-IWF functions

When finished, press the **Assign** button

Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)


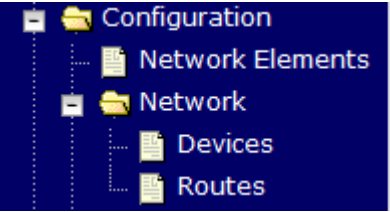

12 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <div><code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></div></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> <div></div>
--------------------------------	----------------------------	--

Procedure 22 Configure the MP Server Group(s) and Profile(s)

13 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Restart MP blade servers	<p>Navigate to Main menu->Status & Manage->Server</p>  <p>For each MP server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Select the MP server.• Select the Restart button.• Answer OK to the confirmation popup. Wait for the message which tells you that the restart was successful. <p><input type="button" value="Stop"/> <input type="button" value="Restart"/> <input type="button" value="Reboot"/> <input type="button" value="NTP Sync"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Note: POLICY AND CHARGING DRA INSTALLATIONS: You may continue to see alarms related to ComAgent until you complete PCA installation by finishing Procedure 39.</p>
--------------------------------	---	---

4.11 Application Configuration: Signaling Network

Procedure 23 Configure the Signaling Networks

S T E P #	This procedure will provide the steps to configure the signaling networks Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS) , and ask for assistance.	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <input type="text" value="http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address>"/></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> 
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Navigate to Signaling Network Configuration Screen	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Network</p>  <p>Click on Insert in the lower left corner.</p> 


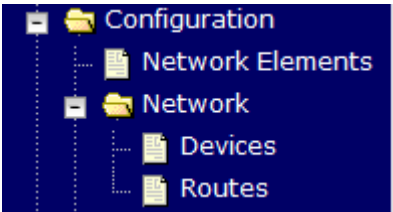
Procedure 23 Configure the Signaling Networks

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP: Add Signaling Networks</p>	<p>You will see the following screen:</p> <p>Insert Network</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Network Name</td><td>XSI1 *</td><td>The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alpha]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network Element</td><td>- Unassigned - *</td><td>The network element this network is a part of. If not spec</td></tr> <tr> <td>VLAN ID</td><td>5 *</td><td>The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Rang</td></tr> <tr> <td>Network Address</td><td>10.71.88.0 *</td><td>The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Ran colon hex (IPv6) format.]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Netmask</td><td>255.255.255.0 *</td><td>Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Defau IPv6) or dotted decimal (IPv4) format.]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Router IP</td><td>10.71.88.3</td><td>The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a def route on servers with interfaces on this network. If custom monitored.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Default Network</td><td><input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No</td><td>A selection indicating whether this is the network with a c</td></tr> <tr> <td>Routable</td><td><input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No</td><td>Whether or not this network is routable outside its netwo be possibly present in all network elements.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Ok Apply Cancel</p> <p>Enter the Network Name, VLAN ID, Network Address, Netmask, and Router IP that matches the Signaling network</p> <p>Note: Even if the network does not use VLAN Tagging, you should enter the correct VLAN ID here as indicated by the NAPD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IMPORTANT: Leave the Network Element field as Unassigned. • Select No for Default Network • Select Yes for Routable. <p>Press OK. if you are finished adding signaling networks</p> <p>-OR-</p> <p>Press Apply to save this signaling network and repeat this step to enter additional signaling networks.</p>	Field	Value	Description	Network Name	XSI1 *	The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alpha]	Network Element	- Unassigned - *	The network element this network is a part of. If not spec	VLAN ID	5 *	The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Rang	Network Address	10.71.88.0 *	The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Ran colon hex (IPv6) format.]	Netmask	255.255.255.0 *	Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Defau IPv6) or dotted decimal (IPv4) format.]	Router IP	10.71.88.3	The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a def route on servers with interfaces on this network. If custom monitored.	Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether this is the network with a c	Routable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is routable outside its netwo be possibly present in all network elements.
Field	Value	Description																											
Network Name	XSI1 *	The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alpha]																											
Network Element	- Unassigned - *	The network element this network is a part of. If not spec																											
VLAN ID	5 *	The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Rang																											
Network Address	10.71.88.0 *	The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Ran colon hex (IPv6) format.]																											
Netmask	255.255.255.0 *	Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Defau IPv6) or dotted decimal (IPv4) format.]																											
Router IP	10.71.88.3	The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a def route on servers with interfaces on this network. If custom monitored.																											
Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether this is the network with a c																											
Routable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is routable outside its netwo be possibly present in all network elements.																											

Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

<p>STEP #</p>	<p>This procedure details other operations that should happen once the NOAM/SOAM sites have been configured and after PCA is activated.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
----------------------	--

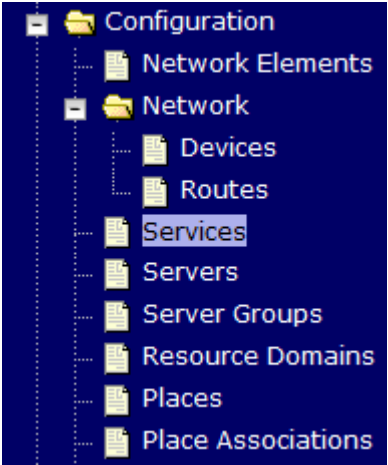

Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</p>	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>The screenshot shows the Oracle System Login page. At the top is the Oracle logo. Below it is the title 'Oracle System Login' and a timestamp 'Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT'. A central box contains the 'Log In' form with fields for 'Username: guiadmin' and 'Password:'. There is a 'Change password' checkbox and a 'Log In' button. Below the box, it says 'Welcome to the Oracle System Login.' and a disclaimer: 'Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.' At the bottom, it states 'Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.'</p> </div>
<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: [PCA Only]:Navigate to Signaling Network Configuration Screen</p>	<p>Note: Execute this step only if you are defining a separate, dedicated network for SBR Replication.</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Network</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">  <p>The screenshot shows a blue menu titled 'Configuration'. It has a tree structure with 'Network Elements' selected, which is expanded to show 'Network', 'Devices', and 'Routes'.</p> </div> <p>Click on Insert in the lower left corner.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>Insert Edit Lock/Unlock Delete Report</p> </div>

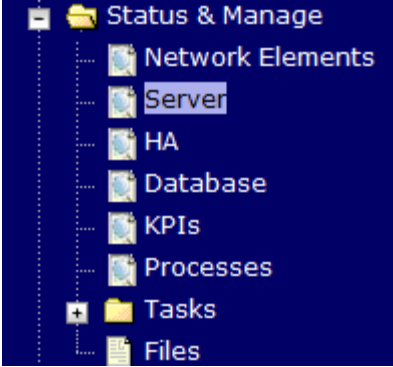
Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP</p> <p>GUI: [PCA Only]: Define SBR DB Replication Network</p>	<p>Note: Execute this step only if you are defining a separate, dedicated network for SBR Replication.</p> <p>Main Menu: Configuration -> Network [Insert]</p> <div> <p>Info ▾</p> </div> <p>Insert Network</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th> <th>Value</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Network Name</td> <td>Replicaion *</td> <td>The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alphanumeric]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Element</td> <td>- Unassigned - ▾</td> <td>The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, t</td> </tr> <tr> <td>VLAN ID</td> <td>8 *</td> <td>The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Network Address</td> <td>10.71.88.0 *</td> <td>The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = V format.]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Netmask</td> <td>255.255.255.0 *</td> <td>Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/ decimal (IPv4) format.]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Router IP</td> <td>10.71.88.3</td> <td>The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default ne with interfaces on this network. If customer router monitoring is</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Default Network</td> <td> <input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No </td> <td>A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Routable</td> <td> <input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No </td> <td>Whether or not this network is routable outside its network ele present in all network elements.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <div> <p>Ok Apply Cancel</p> </div> <p>Enter the Network Name, VLAN ID, Network Address, Netmask, and Router IP that matches the SBR DB Replication network</p> <p>Note: Even if the network does not use VLAN Tagging, you should enter the correct VLAN ID here as indicated by the NAPD</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IMPORTANT: Leave the Network Element field as Unassigned. • Select No for Default Network • Select Yes for Routable. <p>Press Ok, if you are finished adding signaling networks -OR- Press Apply to save this signaling network and repeat this step to enter additional signaling networks.</p>	Field	Value	Description	Network Name	Replicaion *	The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alphanumeric]	Network Element	- Unassigned - ▾	The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, t	VLAN ID	8 *	The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-	Network Address	10.71.88.0 *	The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = V format.]	Netmask	255.255.255.0 *	Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/ decimal (IPv4) format.]	Router IP	10.71.88.3	The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default ne with interfaces on this network. If customer router monitoring is	Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default	Routable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is routable outside its network ele present in all network elements.
Field	Value	Description																											
Network Name	Replicaion *	The name of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = Alphanumeric]																											
Network Element	- Unassigned - ▾	The network element this network is a part of. If not specified, t																											
VLAN ID	8 *	The VLAN ID to use for this network. [Default = N/A. Range = 1-																											
Network Address	10.71.88.0 *	The network address of this network. [Default = N/A. Range = V format.]																											
Netmask	255.255.255.0 *	Subnetting to apply to servers within this network. [Default = N/ decimal (IPv4) format.]																											
Router IP	10.71.88.3	The IP address of a router on this network. If this is a default ne with interfaces on this network. If customer router monitoring is																											
Default Network	<input type="radio"/> Yes <input checked="" type="radio"/> No	A selection indicating whether this is the network with a default																											
Routable	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Yes <input type="radio"/> No	Whether or not this network is routable outside its network ele present in all network elements.																											


Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: [PCA Only]: Perform Additional Service to Networks Mapping</p>	<p>Note: Execute this step only if you are defining a separate, dedicated network for SBR Replication.</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Services</p>  <p>Select the Edit button</p>  <p>Set the Services as shown in the table below:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Intra-NE Network</th><th>Inter-NE Network</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Replication_MP</td><td><IMI Network></td><td><SBR DB Replication Network>*</td></tr> <tr> <td>ComAgent</td><td><IMI Network></td><td><SBR DB Replication Network>*</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Note: It is recommended that dual-path HA heartbeats be enabled in support of geo-diverse SBRs. This requires participating servers to be attached to at least two routable networks.</p> <p>Note: For HA_MP_Secondary it is recommended the Inter-NE Network be set as the XSI network (configured in Step 2) and Intra-NE Network be set as the InternalIMI network.</p> <p>Services</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Intra-NE Network</th><th>Inter-NE Network</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OAM</td><td>INTERNALIMI</td><td>INTERNALXMI</td></tr> <tr> <td>Replication</td><td>INTERNALIMI</td><td>INTERNALXMI</td></tr> <tr> <td>Signaling</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>HA_Secondary</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>HA_MP_Secondary</td><td>Unspecified</td><td>Unspecified</td></tr> <tr> <td>Replication_MP</td><td>INTERNALIMI</td><td>CompassXSI1</td></tr> <tr> <td>ComAgent</td><td>INTERNALIMI</td><td>INTERNALXMI</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Select the Ok button to apply the Service-to-Network selections.</p>	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*	ComAgent	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*	Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network	OAM	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI	Replication	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI	Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified	Replication_MP	INTERNALIMI	CompassXSI1	ComAgent	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network																																	
Replication_MP	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*																																	
ComAgent	<IMI Network>	<SBR DB Replication Network>*																																	
Name	Intra-NE Network	Inter-NE Network																																	
OAM	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI																																	
Replication	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI																																	
Signaling	Unspecified	Unspecified																																	
HA_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																	
HA_MP_Secondary	Unspecified	Unspecified																																	
Replication_MP	INTERNALIMI	CompassXSI1																																	
ComAgent	INTERNALIMI	INTERNALXMI																																	

Procedure 24 Additional Servers to Network Mapping (PCA Only)

5 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI:[PCA Only] Restart SBR Servers	<p>Warning: DO NOT perform this step on previously installed SBR servers</p> <p>Navigate to Main menu->Status & Manage->Server</p>  <p>For each SBR server:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Select the SBR server.• Select the Restart button.• Answer OK to the confirmation popup. Wait for the message which tells you that the restart was successful. <p><input type="button" value="Stop"/> <input type="button" value="Restart"/> <input type="button" value="Reboot"/> <input type="button" value="NTP Sync"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Note: POLICY AND CHARGING DRA INSTALLATIONS: You may continue to see alarms related to ComAgent until you complete PCA installation by finishing Procedure .</p>
-------------------------------	--	---

Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

S T E P #	This procedure will provide the steps to configure the signaling devices	
	Note: The site specific HW configuration will affect which steps need to be executed:	
	Questions:	How many pairs of switches are in the enclosure?
	Possible Execution Scenarios:	Will the MP use a bonded interface?
	Single	N/A
	Multiple	Yes
	Multiple	No
<p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>		
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Oracle System Login</p> <p>Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: 300px;"> <p style="text-align: center;">Log In</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: <input type="text" value="guiadmin"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="password" value="••••••"/></p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="checkbox"/> Change password </p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Log In"/> </p> </div> <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p><small>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</small></p> <hr/> <p><small>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</small></p> </div>

Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

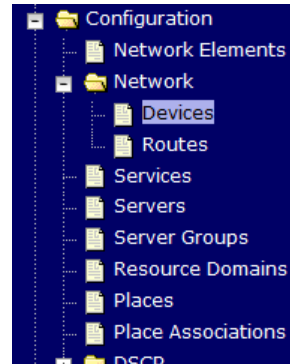
2



NOAM VIP GUI: Make Signaling Devices Configurable (Un-bonded, non-VLAN signaling interfaces only)

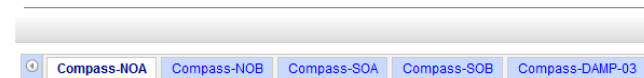
Note: You will only execute this step if you are using un-bonded, non-VLAN tagged Ethernet interfaces for signaling traffic.

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> Network -> Devices**



You should see several tabs each representing a blade in the system. Click on the tab representing the first MP Blade.

Main Menu: Configuration -> Network -> Devices



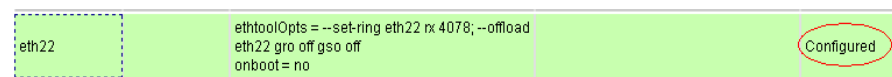
You should see a list of network devices installed on the MP.

Select all Ethernet devices that will be used as un-bonded signaling interfaces and have "Discovered" as their Configuration Status.

Next, press the Take Ownership button.



After a brief moment, the selected devices should now show a Configuration Status of "Configured".

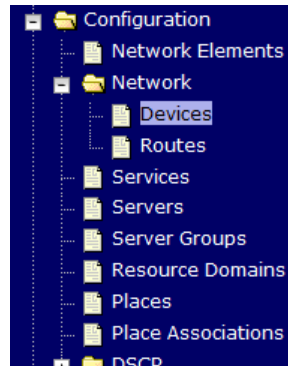


Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

3

NOAM VIP GUI:
Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the first MP

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> Network -> Devices**



You should see several tabs each representing a blade in the system. Click on the tab representing the first MP Blade.

Main Menu: Configuration -> Network -> Devices

blade07 blade08 blade09

Device Name	Device Type	Device Options	IP Inter
bond0	Bonding	onboot = yes bootProto = dhcp baseDevice = ["eth01","eth02"] miimon = 100	
bond0.3	Vlan	onboot = yes bootProto = none baseDevice = ["bond0"]	10.240
bond0.4	Vlan	onboot = yes bootProto = none baseDevice = ["bond0"]	10.240
eth01	Ethernet	onboot = yes bootProto = none	

Insert Edit Delete Report

Refer to the following table to determine which steps to execute next based on the number of enclosure switch pairs and whether Bonded Interfaces are used

Number of Enclosure Switch Pairs	Bonded Interface	Steps to Execute
1	N/A	3 and 4
2 or 3	Yes	5 and 6
2 or 3	No	7 and 8

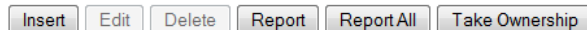
Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

4



NOAM VIP GUI:
Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP (1 pair of enclosure switches)

Click on **Insert**.



The following screen should be displayed. Verify that the blade name on the top corresponds to the MP.

Insert Device on **blade09**

General Options MII Monitoring Options ARP Monitoring Options IP Interfaces		
Field	Value	Description
Device Type	<input type="radio"/> Ethernet <input type="radio"/> Bond <input checked="" type="radio"/> VLAN <input type="radio"/> Alias	Select the device type. [Default = N/A]
Device Monitoring	-- Monitoring Type --	Choose a monitoring style to use with a bonded device. Disabled for non-bonded devices. [Default = MII]
Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default = enabled]
Boot Protocol	None	Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range = [None, DHCP]]
Base Device (s)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> bond0 <input type="checkbox"/> bond0.4 <input type="checkbox"/> eth01 <input type="checkbox"/> eth02	Select the base device(s); VLAN and Alias device require a single base device and bond devices require two base devices. [Default = None]

Device Type: VLAN

Start on Boot: verify checkbox is selected.

Boot Protocol: verify that it is set to None

Base Device: bond0

Click on the **IP Interfaces** tab as shown below.

Insert Device on blade09

General Options MII Monitoring Options ARP Monitoring Options IP Interfaces	
IP Address List: Add Row	

Now Click on **Add Row**, the following will be displayed

IP Address List: Add Row	
<input type="text"/>	XSI1 Remove

Select the first Signaling Network from the drop down menu.

If configuring an **IPv4**, then enter the **IPv4** address.

If configuring an **IPv6** address and **IPv6 auto-configuration** is enabled on your signaling network, and the MPs are in active/standby configuration, then there's no need to enter an IP address, it will be assigned automatically.

If configuring an **IPv6** address and **IPv6 auto-configuration is disabled**, or the MPs are in multi-active mode:

- If an IPv4 already exists, click on **Add Row** and enter the IPv6 address.
- If an IPv4 doesn't exist, simply enter the IPv6 address.

Click on **OK** at the bottom of the screen.



To add additional Signaling Interfaces, click on Insert again and repeat this step, otherwise continue with the next step.

Skip the next 2 steps and continue to **step 6**

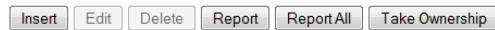
Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

5



NOAM VIP GUI:
Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 1 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches with bonded interfaces)

Click on **Insert**.



The following screen should be displayed. Verify that the blade name on the top corresponds to the MP.

General Options		
MII Monitoring Options		
ARP Monitoring Options		
IP Interfaces		
Field	Value	Description
Device Type	<input type="radio"/> Ethernet <input checked="" type="radio"/> Bonding <input type="radio"/> Vlan <input type="radio"/> Alias	Select the device type. It cannot be changed after device is created. [Default = N/A. Range = Bonding, Vlan, Alias.]
Device Monitoring	MII	Choose a monitoring style to use with a bonded device. Disabled for non-bonded devices. [Default = MII. Options = MII, ARP.]
Start On Boot	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable	Start the device, and also start on boot. [Default = enabled]
Boot Protocol	None	Select the boot protocol. [Default = None, Range = [None, DHCP]]
Base Device (s)	<input type="checkbox"/> bond0 <input type="checkbox"/> bond0.4 <input type="checkbox"/> eth01 <input type="checkbox"/> eth02 <input type="checkbox"/> eth03 <input type="checkbox"/> eth04 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> eth21 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> eth22 <input type="checkbox"/> eth23 <input type="checkbox"/> eth24	The base device(s) for Bonding, Alias and Vlan device types. Alias and Vlan devices require 1 selection; Bonding devices require 2 selections. It cannot be changed after device is created. [Default = N/A. Range = available base devices per device type.]

Device Type: Bonding

Device Monitoring: MII

Start on Boot: Verify that the checkbox is selected.

Boot Protocol: Verify that it is set to None




Base Device: Select the ports that correspond to the signaling enclosure switches. (e.g. if the signaling switches are in Slots 3 and 4, you would select eth11 and eth12)

Click on **OK** at the bottom of the screen.



Note: ARP Device Monitoring while using IPv6 ONLY is not supported

Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 2 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches with bonded interfaces)</p>	<p>Continued from the previous step</p> <p>Next click Insert again. The same screen as above will appear, select the following:</p> <p>Device Type: VLAN</p> <p>Start on Boot: verify that the checkbox is selected.</p> <p>Boot Protocol: verify that it is set to None</p> <p>Base Device: bond1.</p> <p>Now Click on the IP Interfaces tab as shown below.</p> <p>Insert Device on blade09</p>  <p>Now Click on Add Row, the following will be displayed</p>  <p>Select the first Signaling Network from the drop down menu.</p> <p>Enter the IP address that corresponds to the IPv4 or IPv6 interface.</p> <p>Click on OK at the bottom of the screen.</p>  <p>To add additional Signaling Interfaces, Select Insert again and repeat this step, otherwise continue with the next step.</p>
--	---	---

NOAM VIP GUI:

Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 1 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches without bonded interfaces)


ID	Type	Configuration	Status
eth04	Ethernet	onboot = no bootProto = none monitorType = none	
eth21	Ethernet	onboot = no bootProto = none monitorType = none	
eth22	Ethernet	onboot = no bootProto = none monitorType = none	
eth23	Ethernet	onboot = no bootProto = none monitorType = none	
eth24	Ethernet	onboot = no bootProto = none monitorType = none	

Buttons: [Insert] [Edit] [Delete] [Report]

Procedure 25 Configure the Signaling Devices

<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Configure the Signaling Interfaces of the MP-Part 2 (multiple pairs of enclosure switches without bonded interfaces)</p>	<p>Start on Boot: Verify that the checkbox is selected.</p> <p>Boot Protocol: verify that it is set to None</p> <div> <div>Start On Boot</div> <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable</div> </div> <div> <div>Boot Protocol</div> <div>None ▾</div> </div> <p>Now Click on the IP Interfaces tab as shown below.</p> <p>Insert Device on blade09</p> <div> <div>General Options</div> <div>MII Monitoring Options</div> <div>ARP Monitoring Options</div> <div>IP Interfaces</div> </div> <div> <div>IP Address List:</div> <div>Add Row</div> </div> <p>Now Click on Add Row, the following will be displayed</p> <div> <div>IP Address List:</div> <div>Add Row</div> <div> <input type="text"/> <div>XS11 ▾</div> <div>Remove</div> </div> </div> <p>Select the first Signaling Network from the drop down menu.</p> <p>Enter the IP address that corresponds to the IPv4 or IPv6 interface.</p> <p>Click on OK at the bottom of the screen.</p> <div> <div>Ok</div> <div>Apply</div> <div>Cancel</div> </div> <p>Now repeat this step to configure the second signaling interface (eth22).</p>
<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Configure the Interfaces of the other MPs.</p>	<p>Repeat this procedure to configure the signaling devices of all other MPs.</p>

Procedure 26 Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic (Optional)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the DSCP values for outgoing packets on servers. DSCP values can be applied to an outbound interface as a whole, or to all outbound traffic using a specific TCP or SCTP source port. This step is optional and should only be executed if has been decided that your network will utilize packet DSCP markings for Quality-of-Service purposes.</p> <p>Note: If your enclosure switches already have DSCP configuration for the signaling VLANs, then the switch configuration will override the settings in this procedure. It is strongly recommended, however, that you configure DSCP here at the application level where you have the most knowledge about outgoing traffic patterns and qualities.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of: <input type="text" value="http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address>"/></p> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> 

Procedure 26 Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic (Optional)

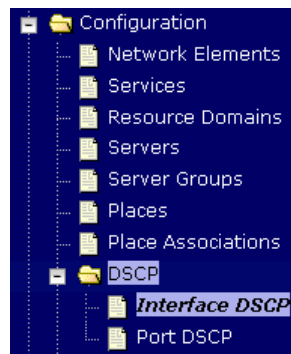
2



NOAM VIP
GUI: Option 1:
 Configure
 Interface
 DSCP

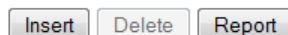
Note: The values displayed in the screenshots are for demonstration purposes only. The exact DSCP values for your site will vary.

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Configuration -> DSCP -> Interface DSCP**



Select the server you wish to configure from the list of servers on the 2nd line. (You can view all servers with **Entire Network** selected; or limit yourself to a particular server group by clicking on that server group name's tab).

Click **Insert**



Main Menu: Configuration -> DSCP -> Interface DSCP



Select the network interface from the drop down box, then enter the *DSCP value* you wish to have applied to packets leaving this interface.

Main Menu: [Insertdscpbyintf]

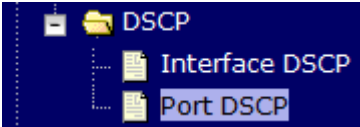
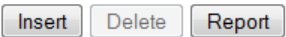
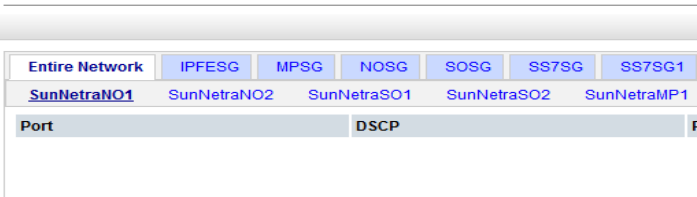
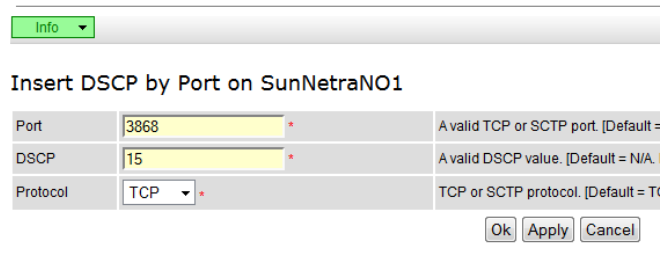


Insert DSCP by Interface on FZTEST-MP1



Click **OK** if there are no more interfaces on this server to configure, or **Apply** to finish this interface and continue on with more interfaces by selecting them from the drop down and entering their *DSCP values*.

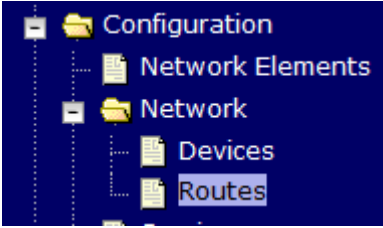
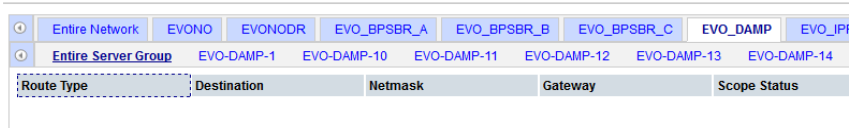

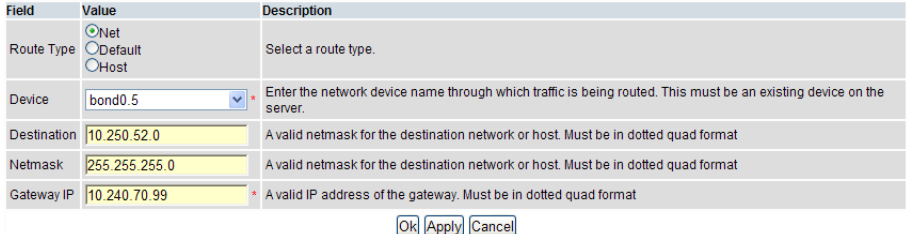
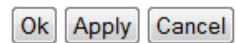
Procedure 26 Configure DSCP Values for Outgoing Traffic (Optional)

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Option 2: Configure Port DSCP</p>	<p>Note: The values displayed in the screenshots are for demonstration purposes only. The exact DSCP values for your site will vary.</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> DSCP -> Port DSCP</p>  <p>Select the server you wish to configure from the list of servers on the 2nd line. (You can view all servers with Entire Network selected; or limit yourself to a particular server group by clicking on that server group name's tab).</p> <p>Click Insert</p>  <p>Main Menu: Configuration -> DSCP -> Port DSCP</p>  <p>Enter the source port, DSCP value, and select the transport protocol.</p> <p>Main Menu: Configuration -> DSCP -> Port DSCP [Insert]</p>  <p>Click OK if there are no more port DSCPs on this server to configure, or Apply to finish this port entry and continue entering more <i>DSCP mappings</i>.</p>
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Repeat for additional servers.</p>	<p>Repeat Steps 2-3 for all remaining servers.</p>

Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure Signaling Network Routes on MP-type servers (DA-MP, IPFE, SBR, SS7-MP, etc.)</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>The screenshot shows the Oracle System Login page. At the top is the Oracle logo. Below it is the text 'Oracle System Login' followed by a horizontal line and the date 'Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT'. In the center is a 'Log In' box with the text 'Enter your username and password to log in'. Inside this box are fields for 'Username: guiadmin' and 'Password: ••••••••', a 'Change password' checkbox, and a 'Log In' button. Below the box is the text 'Welcome to the Oracle System Login.' At the bottom, a disclaimer states: 'Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.'</p> </div>

Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Navigate to Routes Configuration Screen</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Configuration -> Network -> Routes</p>  <p>Select the first MP Server you see listed on the first row of tabs as shown, then click the Entire Server Group link. Initially, no routes should be displayed.</p> 
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Add Route</p>	<p>Click on Insert at the bottom of the screen to add additional routes.</p> 
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Add Default Route for MPs Going Through Signaling Network Gateway (Optional)</p>	<p>OPTIONAL - Only execute this step if you performed Procedure 20 Step 10: which removed the XML gateway default route on MPs</p> <p>If your MP servers no longer have a default route, then you can now insert a default route here which uses one of the signaling network gateways.</p>  <p>Route Type: Default</p> <p>Device: Select the signaling device that is directly attached to the network where the XSI default gateway resides.</p> <p>Gateway IP: The XSI gateway you wish to use for default signaling network access.</p> <p>Select OK</p> 


Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes

<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Add Network Routes for Diameter Peers</p>	<p>Use this step to add IP and/or IPv6 routes to <i>diameter</i> peer destination networks. The goal here is to ensure that diameter traffic uses the gateway(s) on the signaling networks.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Route Type</td><td><input checked="" type="radio"/> Net <input type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host</td><td>Select a route type.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Device</td><td>bond0.5</td><td>Enter the network device name through which traffic is being routed. This must be an existing device on the server.</td></tr> <tr> <td>Destination</td><td>10.250.46.0</td><td>A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format</td></tr> <tr> <td>Netmask</td><td>255.255.255.0</td><td>A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format</td></tr> <tr> <td>Gateway IP</td><td>10.240.70.99</td><td>A valid IP address of the gateway. Must be in dotted quad format</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>OK Apply Cancel</p> <p>Route Type: Net</p> <p>Device: Select the appropriate signaling interface that will be used to connect to that network</p> <p>Destination: Enter the Network ID of Network to which the peer node is connected to.</p> <p>Netmask: Enter the corresponding Netmask.</p> <p>Gateway IP: Enter the Int-XSI switch VIP of the chosen Network for L3 deployments (either of int-XSI-1 or of int-XSI2). Or the IP of the customer gateway for L2 deployments.</p> <p>If you have more routes to enter, Press Apply to save the current route entry and repeat this step to enter more routes</p> <p>If you are finished entering routes, Press OK to save the latest route and leave this screen.</p> <p>Layer 3 Configurations Aggregation Switch Configurations Only: Routes should be configured on the aggregation switches so that the destination networks configured in this step are reachable. This can be done by running the following netconfig commands from the site's local PMAC (examples shown -- actual values will vary) :</p> <p>Add routes (IPv4 & IPv6):</p> <pre>\$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A addRoute network=10.10.10.0 mask=25.255.255.0 nexthop=10.50.76.81 \$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A addRoute network6=2001::/64 nexthop=fd0f::1</pre> <p>Delete routes (IPv4 & IPv6):</p> <pre>\$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A deleteRoute network=10.10.10.0 mask=25.255.255.0 nexthop=10.50.76.81 \$ sudo netConfig -device=switch1A deleteRoute network6=2001::/64 nexthop=fd0f::1</pre>	Field	Value	Description	Route Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Net <input type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host	Select a route type.	Device	bond0.5	Enter the network device name through which traffic is being routed. This must be an existing device on the server.	Destination	10.250.46.0	A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format	Netmask	255.255.255.0	A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format	Gateway IP	10.240.70.99	A valid IP address of the gateway. Must be in dotted quad format
Field	Value	Description																		
Route Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Net <input type="radio"/> Default <input type="radio"/> Host	Select a route type.																		
Device	bond0.5	Enter the network device name through which traffic is being routed. This must be an existing device on the server.																		
Destination	10.250.46.0	A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format																		
Netmask	255.255.255.0	A valid netmask for the destination network or host. Must be in dotted quad format																		
Gateway IP	10.240.70.99	A valid IP address of the gateway. Must be in dotted quad format																		

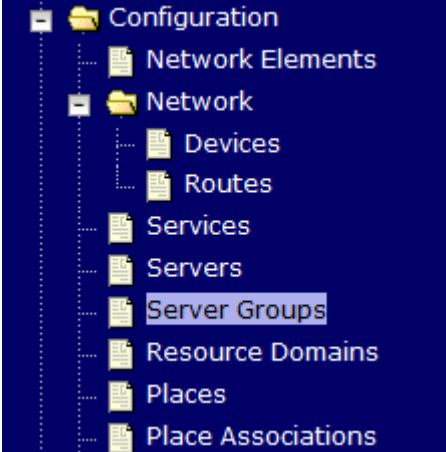
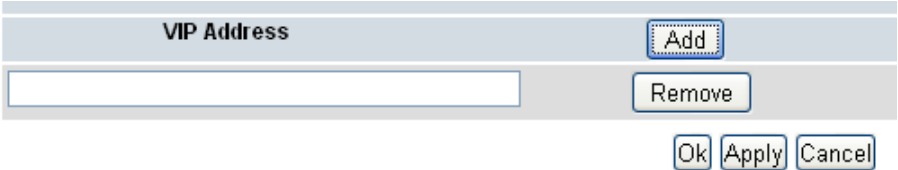
Procedure 27 Configure the Signaling Network Routes

6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Local PMAC: Perform a netConfig Backup	<p>After the routes are added to the aggregation switches via netconfig, a netconfig backup should be taken so that the new routes are retained in the backup.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ netConfig backupConfiguration -device=<Switch Hostname -service=<ssh_Service> --filename=<Backup Filename></pre>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Repeat for all other MP server groups.	<p>The routes entered in this procedure should now be configured on all MPs in the server group for the first MP you selected.</p> <p>If you have additional MP server groups, repeat from step 2, but this time, select an MP from the next MP server group.</p> <p>Continue until you have covered all MP server groups.</p>

Procedure 28 Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the VIPs for the signaling networks on the MPs.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
<p>1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</p> <p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></p> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div>

Procedure 28 Add VIP for Signaling networks (Active/Standby Configurations Only)

<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Edit the MP Server Group and add VIPs (ONLY FOR 1+1)</p>	<p>IF YOUR MPs ARE IN A DSR MULTI-ACTIVE CLUSTER SERVER GROUP CONFIGURATION (N+0), THEN SKIP THIS STEP</p> <p>From Main Menu->Configuration->Server Groups</p>  <p>Select the MP server group, and then select Edit</p> <p><input type="button" value="Insert"/> <input type="button" value="Edit"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Report"/></p> <p>Click on Add to add the VIP for XSI1 Enter the VIP of int-XSI-1 and click on Apply</p> <p>Click on Add again to add the VIP for XSI2 Enter the VIP of int-XSI-2 and click on Apply</p> <p>If more Signaling networks exist, add their corresponding VIP addresses.</p> <p>Finally Click on OK.</p> 
--	--

4.12 Application Configuration: SNMP (Optional)

Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)

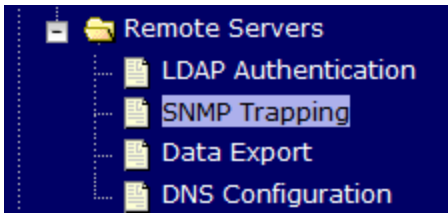
S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure forwarding of SNMP Traps from each individual server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> <div></div>

Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)


2
☐

NOAM VIP
GUI:
Configure
System-
Wide
SNMP Trap
Receiver(s)

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Administration -> Remote Servers -> SNMP Trapping**



Verify that **Traps Enabled** is checked:



Fill in the IP address or hostname of the Network Management Station (NMS) you wish to forward traps to. This IP should be reachable from the NOAMP's "XMI" network.

Continue to fill in additional secondary, tertiary, etc. Manager IPs in the corresponding slots if desired.

Variable	Value
Manager 1	<input type="text" value="10.10.55.88"/>

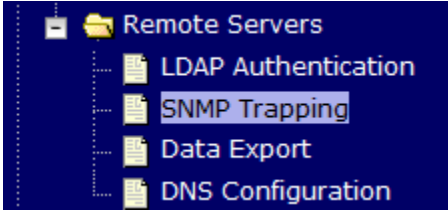

Enter the **SNMP Community Name**:

SNMPv2c Read-Only Community Name	<input type="text" value="snmppublic"/>
SNMPv2c Read-Write Community Name	<input type="text" value="snmppublic"/>

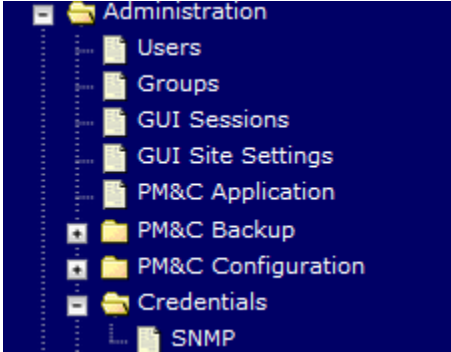
Leave all other fields at their default values.

Press **OK**

Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAMP VIP: Enable Traps from Individual Servers (Optional)</p>	<p>Note: By default SNMP traps from MPs are aggregated and then displayed at the active NOAMP. If instead, you wish for every server to send its own traps directly to the NMS, then execute this procedure.</p> <p>This procedure requires that all servers, including MPs, have an XML interface on which the customer SNMP Target server (NMS) is reachable.</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Administration -> Remote Servers -> SNMP Trapping</p>  <p>Make sure the checkbox next to Enabled is checked, if not, check it as shown below</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td>[Default: enabled.]</td></tr> <tr> <td>Traps from Individual Servers</td><td><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled</td><td>Enable or disable SNMP traps from in sent from individual servers, otherwis OAM&P server. [Default: disabled.]</td></tr> <tr> <td></td><td></td><td>Configured Community Name (SNMP</td></tr> </table> <p>Then click on Apply and verify that the data is committed.</p>			[Default: enabled.]	Traps from Individual Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Enable or disable SNMP traps from in sent from individual servers, otherwis OAM&P server. [Default: disabled.]			Configured Community Name (SNMP
		[Default: enabled.]									
Traps from Individual Servers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	Enable or disable SNMP traps from in sent from individual servers, otherwis OAM&P server. [Default: disabled.]									
		Configured Community Name (SNMP									
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI: Login (DSR 7.0 Only)</p>	<p>DSR 7.0 Only. For DSR 7.1, skip to step 7</p> <p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <p><code>http://<PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP></code></p> <p>Login as pmacadmin user:</p> 									

Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)


<div>5</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<p>PMAC GUI: Update the TVOE Host SNMP Community String (DSR 7.0 Only)</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">DSR 7.0 Only. For DSR 7.1, skip to step 7</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Administration -> Credentials -> SNMP</p>  <p>Select the Read Only or ReadWrite button depending on which SNMP community string is to be updated.</p> <div><p>SNMP Community String Update</p><p>Tasks ▾</p><p>Select Read Only or Read/Write Community String:</p><p><input checked="" type="radio"/> Read Only <input type="radio"/> Read/Write</p><p>Check this box if updating servers using the Site Specific SNMP Community String:</p><p><input type="checkbox"/> Use Site Specific Read Only Community String: TPDverejny</p><p>Community String: <input type="text"/></p><p>Note: The Community String value can be 1 to 31 uppercase, lowercase, or numeric characters.</p><p><input type="button" value="Update Servers"/></p></div> <p>Note: If this the first time the SNMP Community Strings has been updated for this PMAC, perform the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Leave the Use Site Specific checkbox (<i>TPDverejny</i>) unchecked.2. Enter the community string configured in step 2 of this procedure.
--	---	--

Procedure 29 Configure SNMP Trap Receiver(s) (Optional)

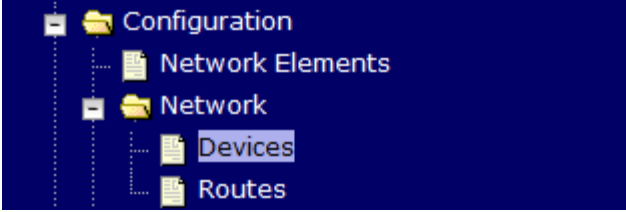
6 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Update the TVOE Host SNMP Community String (DSR 7.0 Only)	<p style="text-align: center;">DSR 7.0 Only. For DSR 7.1, skip to step 7</p> <p>Continued from the previous step, enter the new Community String into the Community string textbox.</p> <p>Click the Update Servers button</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;">Update Servers</div> <p>The following warning will be displayed:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 10px; margin: 10px auto; width: 80%;"> <p><small>You are about to update the Read Only SNMP Credentials on all known supporting TVOE servers and the PM&C guest on the control network of this PM&C. Changing of SNMP Community Strings is only supported across product release versions that support this functionality and attempting to do so with product versions not supporting it may cause the system to become inoperable.</small></p> <p><small>Are you sure you want to continue?</small></p> <div style="text-align: right;"> <input type="button" value="OK"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div> </div> <p>Select OK</p> <p>Note: When this operation is initiated, all supporting TVOE hosting servers and the PMAC guest on the PMAC control network will be updated. All those servers that match the existing Site Specific Community String will not be updated again until the string name is changed.</p>
7 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC: Establish an SSH Session	<p style="text-align: center;">DSR 7.1 Only. For DSR 7.0, skip this step.</p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC, login as admusr.</p>
8 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC: Update the PMAC Community String	<p style="text-align: center;">DSR 7.1 Only. For DSR 7.0, skip this step.</p> <p>Execute the following command to update the PMAC community string to the one configured in step 2 of this document:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> <pre>\$ sudo pmaccli setCommStr --accessType=rw --commStr=<community string from step 2></pre> </div>
9 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC: Verify Updated Community String	<p style="text-align: center;">DSR 7.1 Only. For DSR 7.0, skip this step.</p> <p>Execute the following command to verify the updated community string. The output of the command should display the community string set in step 8:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin: 10px auto; width: fit-content;"> <pre>\$ sudo pmaccli getCommStrStatus</pre> </div>

4.13 Application Configuration: IP Front End (IPFE)

Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

S T E P #		<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure IP Front End (IPFE), and optimize performance.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>If not already done, establish a GUI session on the NOAM server the VIP IP address of the NOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code> </div> <p>Login to the NOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> 
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Determine whether the Appworks update Script needs to be executed	<p>Note: If you converted a Discovered device to a Configured device on the Configuration -> Network -> Devices and are using the converted device for an IPFE XSI interface, complete this procedure.</p> <p>Otherwise, skip to step 4.</p> <p>Note: If you do not recall whether any IPFE devices were converted, complete the following step.</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Execute the AppWorks update Scripts. (DSR 7.0)	<p>DSR 7.0 ONLY, DSR 7.1 skip to step 8</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <code>\$ sudo ipfeAppworksUpdate.sh</code> </div>

Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Verify the Appworks update Script ran. (DSR 7.0)</p>	<p>DSR 7.0 ONLY</p> <p>Select Configuration -> Network -> Devices</p>  <p>Select the tabs for the IPFE.</p> <p>Verify that, for devices that were converted to Configured from Discovered, the following information is seen in the Device Options column:</p> <pre>ethtoolOpts = --set-ring eth04 rx 4078; --offload eth04 gro off gso off onboot = no</pre>
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>1st IPFE Server: Execute the ipfeNetUpdate script and reboot.(DSR 7.0)</p>	<p>DSR 7.0 ONLY</p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the IPFE server. Login as admusr.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo ipfeNetUpdate.sh</pre> <p>Now reboot the IPFE Server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo init 6</pre>

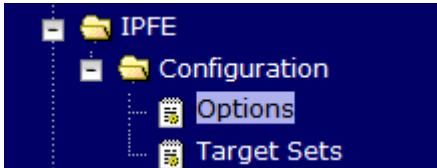
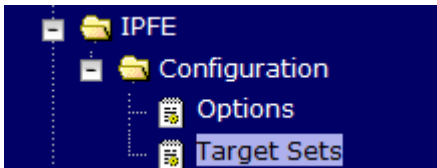
Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

<div>6</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<p>1st IPFE: Verify the ipfeNetUpdate script ran. (DSR 7.0)</p>	<p>DSR 7.0 ONLY</p> <p>After the IPFE server reboots, re-establish the ssh session and login as admusr.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /etc/sysconfig/network NETWORKING=yes NETWORKING_IPV6=yes NTPSERVERARGS=iburst HOSTNAME= <hostname of IPFE Server> IPV6INIT=yes IPV6FORWARDING=yes</pre> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /etc/modprobe.d/bnx2x.conf options bnx2x num_queues=25 disable_tpa=1</pre> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-eth01 ETHTOOL_OPTS="--set-ring eth01 rx 4078; --offload eth01 gro off gso off"</pre>
<div>7</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<p>Additional IPFE servers: Repeat for additional IPFE Servers. (DSR 7.0)</p>	<p>Repeat steps 5-6 for additional IPFE servers.</p>

Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

<div>8</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	SOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server the VIP IP address of the SOAM server.</p> <p>Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><code>http://<Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></div> <p>Login to the SOAM GUI as the guiadmin user:</p> <div></div>
--	----------------------------	--

Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

<div>9</div> <div></div>	<div><div><div>SOAM VIP GUI:</div><div>Configuration of replication IPFE association data.</div></div></div>	<div><div>Select Main Menu -> IPFE -> Configuration -> Options</div><div></div><div><div>Enter the IP address of the 1st IPFE in the IPFE-A1 IP Address field and the IP address of the 2nd IPFE in the IPFE-A2 IP Address field</div><div>If applicable, enter the address of the 3rd and 4th IPFE servers in IPFE-B1 IP Address and IPFE-B2 IP Address fields.</div></div><div><table><tr><th>Variable</th><th>Value</th></tr><tr><td colspan="2">Inter-IPFE Synchronization</td></tr><tr><td>IPFE-A1 IP Address</td><td>10.240.79.103 - Viper-IPFE1</td></tr><tr><td>IPFE-A2 IP Address</td><td>10.240.79.104 - Viper-IPFE2</td></tr><tr><td>IPFE-B1 IP Address</td><td><unset></td></tr><tr><td>IPFE-B2 IP Address</td><td><unset></td></tr></table></div><div><div>Note: It is recommended that the address reside on the IMI (Internal Management Interface) network.</div><div>Note: IPFE-A1 and IPFE-A2 must have connectivity between each other via these addresses. The same applies with IPFE-B1 and IPFE-B2.</div></div></div>	Variable	Value	Inter-IPFE Synchronization		IPFE-A1 IP Address	10.240.79.103 - Viper-IPFE1	IPFE-A2 IP Address	10.240.79.104 - Viper-IPFE2	IPFE-B1 IP Address	<unset>	IPFE-B2 IP Address	<unset>
Variable	Value													
Inter-IPFE Synchronization														
IPFE-A1 IP Address	10.240.79.103 - Viper-IPFE1													
IPFE-A2 IP Address	10.240.79.104 - Viper-IPFE2													
IPFE-B1 IP Address	<unset>													
IPFE-B2 IP Address	<unset>													
<div>10</div> <div></div>	<div><div><div>SOAM VIP GUI:</div><div>Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 1 (Insert Target Set)</div></div></div>	<div><div>Select Main Menu -> IPFE -> Configuration -> Target Sets</div><div></div><div><div>Select either Insert IPv4 or Insert IPv6 button, depending on the IP version of the target set you plan to use.</div><div><div>Insert IPv4</div><div>Insert IPv6</div><div>Edit</div><div>Delete</div></div></div></div>												

Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

11 <input type="checkbox"/>	SOAM VIP GUI: Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 2 (Target Set Configuration)	<p>Continued from the previous step, the following are configurable:</p> <p>Protocols: protocols the target set will support.</p> <div> Protocols <div> <input type="radio"/> TCP only <input type="radio"/> SCTP only <input checked="" type="radio"/> Both TCP and SCTP </div> </div> <p>Delete Age: Specifies when the IPFE should remove its association data for a connection. Any packets presenting a source IP address/port combination that had been previously stored as association state but have been idle longer than the Delete Age configuration will be treated as a new connection and will not automatically go to the same application server.</p> <div> Delete Age <div>600 *</div> </div> <p>Load Balance Algorithm: <i>Hash</i> or <i>Least Load</i> options</p> <div> Load Balance Algorithm <div> <input type="radio"/> Hash <input checked="" type="radio"/> Least Load </div> </div> <p>Note: In order for the IPFE to provide Least Load distribution, Main Menu -> IPFE -> Configuration -> Options, Monitoring Protocol must be set to Heartbeat so that the application servers can provide the load information the IPFE uses to select the least-loaded server for connections.</p> <div> Monitoring Protocol <div>Heartbeat *</div> </div> <p>Note: The Least Load option is the default setting, and is the recommended option with exception of unique backward compatibility scenarios.</p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the SOAM VIP, login as admusr.</p> <p>Execute the following command (advise cut and paste to prevent errors):</p> <div> <pre>\$ sudo iset -fvalue="50" DpiOption where "name='MpEngIngressMpsPercentile' " === changed 1 records ===</pre> </div>
12 <input type="checkbox"/>	SOAM VIP: Set Ingress MPS percentile (DSR 7.0 ONLY)	<p>For DSR 7.0 ONLY, If DSR 7.1, skip this step</p> <p>Establish an SSH session to the SOAM VIP, login as admusr.</p> <p>Execute the following command (advise cut and paste to prevent errors):</p> <div> <pre>\$ sudo iset -fvalue="50" DpiOption where "name='MpEngIngressMpsPercentile' " === changed 1 records ===</pre> </div>

Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

13

SOAM VIP

GUI:

Configuration
of IPFE Target
sets-Part 3
(Target Set
Configuration)

(Optional): If you have selected the **Least Load algorithm**, you may configure the following fields to adjust the algorithm's behavior:

MPS Factor – Messages per Second (MPS) is one component of the least load algorithm. This field allows you to set it from 0 (not used in load calculations) to 100 (the only component used for load calculations). It is recommended that IPFE connections have Reserved Ingress MPS set to something other than the default, which is 0.

MPS Factor	50 *
Connection Count Factor	50 *

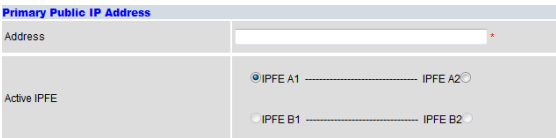
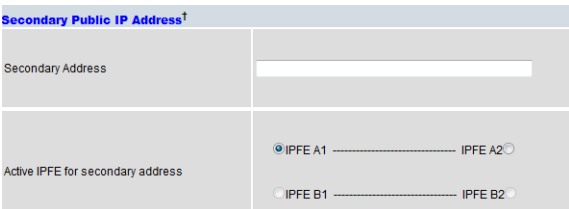
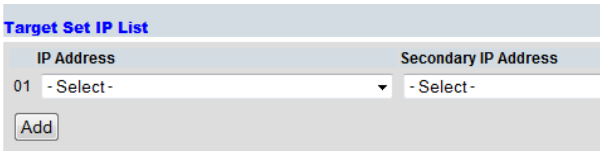
To configure **Reserved Ingress MPS**, go to **Main Menu -> Diameter -> Configuration -> Configuration Sets -> Capacity Configuration Sets**. If you choose not to use **Reserved Ingress MPS**, set **MPS Factor** to 0 and **Connection Count Factor**, described below, to 100.

Connection Count Factor – This is the other component of the **least load** algorithm. This field allows you to set it from 0 (not used in load calculations) to 100 (the only component used for load calculations). Increase this setting if connection storms (the arrival of many connections at a very rapid rate) are a concern.

Allowed Deviation - Percentage within which two application server's load calculation results are considered to be equal. If very short, intense connection bursts are expected to occur, increase the value to smooth out the distribution.

Allowed Deviation	5 *
-------------------	-----

Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

14 <input type="checkbox"/>	SOAM VIP GUI: Configuration of IPFE Target sets-Part 4 (Target Set Configuration)	<p>Primary Public IP Address: IP address for the target set</p>  <p>Note: This address must reside on the XSI (External Signaling Interface) network because it will be used by the application clients to reach the application servers. This address MUST NOT be a real interface address (that is, must not be associated with a network interface card).</p> <p>Active IPFE: IPFE to handle the traffic for the target set address.</p> <p>Secondary Public IP Address: If this target set supports either multi-homed SCTP or Both TCP and SCTP, provide a Secondary IP Address.</p>  <p>Note: A secondary address is required to support SCTP multi-homing. A secondary address can support TCP, but the TCP connections will not be multi-homed.</p> <p>Note: If SCTP multi-homing is to be supported, select the mate IPFE of the Active IPFE for the Active IPFE for secondary address to ensure that SCTP failover functions as designed.</p> <p>Target Set IP List: Select an IP address, a secondary IP address if supporting SCTP multi-homing, a description, and a weight for the application server.</p>  <p>Note: The IP address must be on the XSI network since they must be on the same network as the target set address. This address must also match the IP version of the target set address (IPv4 or IPv6). If the Secondary Public IP Address is configured, it must reside on the same application server as the first IP address.</p> <p>Note: If all application servers have an equal weight (e.g., 100, which is the default), they have an equal chance of being selected. Application servers with larger weights have a greater chance of being selected.</p> <p>Click the Add button to add more application servers (Up to 16)</p> <p>Click the Apply button.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/> </div>
--------------------------------	---	--

Procedure 30 IP Front End (IPFE) Configuration (Optional)

15	SOAM VIP GUI: Repeat for additional Configuration of IPFE Target sets.	Repeat for steps 10-13 for each target set (Up to 16). At least one target set must be configured.
----	---	--

4.14 IDIH Installation and Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

The following procedures outline the steps needed to install and configure IDIH.

Note: If there already exists an IDIH, and this is an IDIH re-installation; execute **Appendix M: IDIH External Drive Removal** before proceeding.



4.14.1 IDIH Installation

This procedure is part of DSR 7.1 software installation. The installation procedure uses the “fast deployment” utility (fdconfig) bundled with the PMAC server to install and configure IDIH.


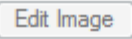

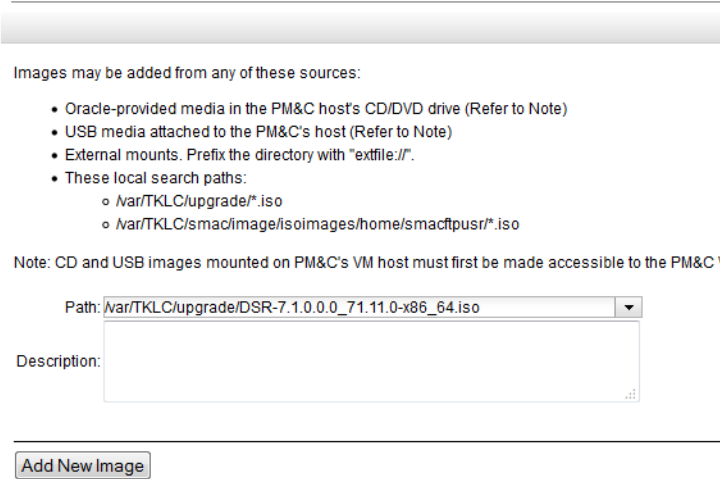
Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

S T E P #	This procedure will provide the steps to install and configure IDIH. Note: For DSR 7.0, refer to [25]. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS) , and ask for assistance.	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	TVOE Host: Load Application ISO	<p>Add the Application ISO images (Mediation, application, and Oracle) to the PM&C, this can be done in one of three ways:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Insert the Application CD required by the application into the removable media drive.2. Attach the USB device containing the ISO image to a USB port.3. Copy the Application iso file to the PM&C server into the /var/TKLC/smac/image/isoimages/home/smacftpusr/ directory as pmacftpusr user: <p>cd into the directory where your ISO image is located on the TVOE Host (<i>not on the PM&C server</i>)</p> <p>Using sftp, connect to the PM&C server</p> <pre>\$ sftp pmacftpusr@<pmac_management_network_ip> \$ put <image>.iso</pre> <p>After the image transfer is 100% complete, close the connection:</p> <pre>\$ quit</pre>

Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI: Login</p>	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p><a href="http://<PMAC Mgmt Network IP>">http://<PMAC Mgmt Network IP></p> </div> <p>Login as pmacadmin user:</p> 
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI: Attach the software Image to the PMAC Guest</p>	<p>If in Step 1 the ISO image was transferred directly to the PM&C guest via sftp, skip the rest of this step and continue with step 4. If the image is on a CD or USB device, continue with this step.</p> <p>In the PM&C GUI, navigate to Main Menu -> VM Management. In the "VM Entities" list, select the PM&C guest. On the resulting "View VM Guest" page, select the Media tab.</p> <p>Under the Media tab, find the ISO image in the "Available Media" list, and click its Attach button. After a pause, the image will appear in the "Attached Media" list.</p> 

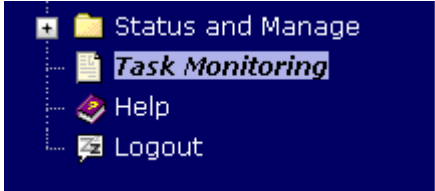
Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI: Add Application Image</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Software -> Manage Software Images</p> <p>Press Add Image button. Use the drop down to select the image.</p> <div>    </div> <p>If the image was supplied on a CD or a USB drive, it will appear as a virtual device ("device://..."). These devices are assigned in numerical order as CD and USB images become available on the Management Server. The first virtual device is reserved for internal use by TVOE and PMAC; therefore, the iso image of interest is normally present on the second device, "device://dev/sr1". If one or more CD or USB-based images were already present on the Management Server before you started this procedure, choose a correspondingly higher device number.</p> <p>If in Step 1 the image was transferred to PMAC via sftp it will appear in the list as a local file "/var/TKLC/...".</p> <p>Add Software Image</p> <div>  </div> <p>Select the appropriate path and Press Add New Image button.</p> <p>You may check the progress using the Task Monitoring link. Observe the green bar indicating success.</p> <p>Once the green bar is displayed, remove the DSR application Media from the optical drive of the management server.</p>
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC: Establish Terminal Session</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC. Login as admusr.</p>
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC: Copy the fdc.cfg file to the guest-dropin Directory</p>	<p>Copy the fdc.cfg file to the pmac guest-dropin directory.</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <div> <pre>\$ sudo cp /usr/TKLC/smac/html/TPD/mediation-*/fdc.cfg /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin</pre> </div>

Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC: Configure the fdccfg file</p>	<p>Configure the fdccfg file. See Appendix L: IDIH Fast Deployment Configuration for a breakdown of the parameters.</p> <p>Update the software versions, hostnames, bond interfaces, network addresses, and network VLAN information for the TVOE host and IDIH guests that you are installing.</p>
<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>TVOE Host: Verify/Remove External Devices</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the TVOE Host which will host the IDIH, login as admusr.</p> <p>On the TVOE host which will host the IDIH, before IDIH has ever been installed, or, after the external disk removal procedure has been successfully completed:</p> <p>Execute the following command:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <pre>\$ ls /dev/sd*</pre> <p>Verify you only have sda* devices (e.g. sda1, sda2, etc...) Expected output:</p> <pre>\$ ls /dev/sd* /dev/sda /dev/sda1 /dev/sda2 /dev/sda3</pre> </div> <p>Note: If any other devices are listed (e.g. sdb*, sdc*, sdd*, etc...) Stop. You must first remove the extra device(s) in your system (e.g. sdb*, sdc*, sdd*, etc...). Reboot the tvoe and verify the extra device(s) are still removed (> ls /dev/sd*)</p>

Procedure 31 IDIH Configuration (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC: Run the FDC creation script <code>idihFdc.sh</code></p>	<p>Run the FDC creation script fdc.sh.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$cd /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin/ \$/usr/TKLC/smac/html/TPD/mediation-7.1.0.0.0_71.x.x- x86_64/fdc.sh fdc.cfg</pre> <p>Note: Rename the <code>fdc.cfg</code> file to your preference; also note that two files are generated by the <code>fdc</code> shell script. One is for the Installation procedure and the other file is used for the upgrade procedure. The upgrade FDC is named <code>upgrade</code>.</p> <p>Example: <code>hostname.cfg</code></p> <p>Note: The following hostname for guests has been reserved for internal use. Please try to avoid them:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • oracle • mediation • appserver <p>Here are the suggested hostname for guests:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <server hostname>-ora example, thunderbolt-ora • <server hostname>-med example, thunderbolt-med • <server hostname>-app example, thunderbolt-app
<p>10</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC: Run the <code>fdconfig</code>.</p>	<p>Run the <code>fdconfig</code> configuration.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <pre>\$sudo fdconfig config -file=hostname_xx-xx-xx.xml</pre> <p>Example:</p> <pre>\$sudo fdconfig config --file=tvoe-ferbrms4_01-22-15.xml</pre>
<p>11</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI: Monitor the Configuration</p>	<p>If not already done so, establish a GUI session on the PMAC server.</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Task Monitoring</p>  <p>Monitor the IDIH configuration to completion.</p>

4.14.2 Post IDIH Installation Configuration

The following sections should be executed after IDIH installation is complete.

4.14.2.1 IDIH Configuration: Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization

After an IDIH fresh installation, reference data synchronization is initially disabled. Reference data synchronization requires some initial configuration before it is enabled.

The Trace Ref Data Adapter application must retrieve data from web services hosted by the DSR SOAM web server, and this requires the DSR SOAM virtual IP address (VIP) to be configured.

The DSR SOAM VIP will be unique at each customer site because it is defined based on the customer's network configuration. Therefore, there is no standard default value for the DSR SOAM VIP.

Procedure 32 Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH (DSR 7.1-Optional)

S T E P #	This procedure will provide the steps to configure DSR reference data syncornization for IDIH Note: For DSR 7.0, refer to [25]. Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number. If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS) , and ask for assistance.	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH Application Server: Login	Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server. Login as user admusr . Issue the following commands to login as tekelec user. <div><pre>\$ sudo su - tekelec</pre></div>

Procedure 32 Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH (DSR 7.1-Optional)

2



**IDIH
Application
Server:**
Execute
Configuration
Script.

Execute the following script:

```
$ apps/trda-config.sh
```

Example output:

```
demo1-app: /usr/TKLC/xIH apps/trda-config.sh
dos2unix: converting file /usr/TKLC/xIH/boa/user_projects/domains/tekelec/nsp/trace-refdata-
adapter.properties to UNIX format ...
Please enter DSR oam server IP address: 10.240.39.175
dos2unix: converting file /usr/TKLC/xIH/boa/user_projects/domains/tekelec/nsp/trace-refdata-
adapter.properties to UNIX format ...
Buildfile: build.xml

app.disable:

common.weblogic.stop:
[echo]
[echo]
[echo] =====
[echo] application: xihtra
[echo] =====
[echo] === stop application EAR
[java] weblogic.Deployer invoked with options: -adminurl http://appserver:7001 -
userconfigfile /usr/TKLC/xIH/boa/user_projects/domains/tekelec/configfile.secure -userkeyfile
/usr/TKLC/xIH/boa/user_projects/domains/tekelec/keyfile.secure -name xIH Trace Reference Data
Adapter -stop
[java] <Oct 17, 2013 11:35:32 AM EDT> <Info> <J2EE Deployment SPI> <BEA-260121> <Initiating
stop operation for application, xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter [archive: null], to configured
targets.>
[java] Task 4 initiated: [Deployer:149026]stop application xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter
on nsp.
[java] Task 4 completed: [Deployer:149026]stop application xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter
on nsp.
[java] Target state: stop completed on Server nsp
[java]

BUILD SUCCESSFUL
Total time: 1 minute 3 seconds
Buildfile: build.xml

app.enable:

common.weblogic.start:
[echo]
[echo]
[echo] =====
[echo] application: xihtra
[echo] =====
[echo] === start application EAR
[java] weblogic.Deployer invoked with options: -adminurl http://appserver:7001 -
userconfigfile /usr/TKLC/xIH/boa/user_projects/domains/tekelec/configfile.secure -userkeyfile
/usr/TKLC/xIH/boa/user_projects/domains/tekelec/keyfile.secure -name xIH Trace Reference Data
Adapter -start
[java] <Oct 17, 2013 11:36:36 AM EDT> <Info> <J2EE Deployment SPI> <BEA-260121> <Initiating
start operation for application, xIH Trace Reference Data Adapter [archive: null], to configured
targets.>
[java] Task 5 initiated: [Deployer:149026]start application xIH Trace Reference Data
Adapter on nsp.
[java] Task 5 completed: [Deployer:149026]start application xIH Trace Reference Data
Adapter on nsp.
[java] Target state: start completed on Server nsp
[java]

BUILD SUCCESSFUL
Total time: 1 minute 3 seconds
```

For prompt “Please enter DSR SOAM server IP address”, enter the VIP of the DSR SOAM and press **Enter**.


Note: If the address entered is unreachable the script will exit with error “Unable to connect to <ip-address>!”

Procedure 32 Configure DSR Reference Data Synchronization for IDIH (DSR 7.1-Optional)

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH App Server: Monitor Completion	<p>Monitor the log file located at:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <code>/var/TKLC/xIH/log/apps/weblogic/apps/application.log</code> </div> <p>Examine the log file for entries containing text “Trace Reference Data Adapter”</p>
-----------------------------------	---	--

4.14.2.2 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain

Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

S T E P #		<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure SSO Domain for IDIH</p> <p>Note: For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin: 5px 0;"> <code>https://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code> </div> <p>Login as the guiadmin user:</p> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 20px 0;">  </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> Oracle System Login Fri Mar 20 12:29:52 2015 EDT </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin: 20px 0;"> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <p>Log In</p> <p>Enter your username and password to log in</p> <p>Username: <input type="text" value="guiadmin"/></p> <p>Password: <input type="password" value="•••••"/></p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Change password</p> <p><input type="button" value="Log In"/></p> </div> </div> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: small;">Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: x-small;">Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 10px auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: x-small;">Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p>

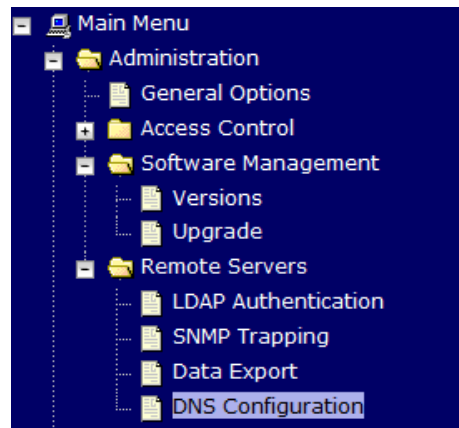
Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

2



NOAM VIP
GUI:
Configure
DNS

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Administration -> Remote Servers -> DNS Configuration**



Configure values for the following fields:

- Domain Name
- Name Server
- Search Domain 1

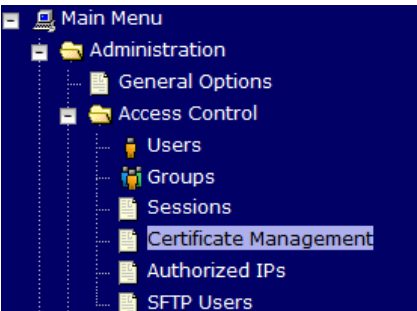
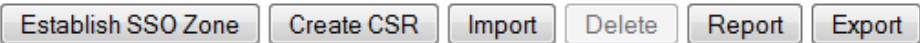

System Domain	
	Domain Name
Domain	<input type="text"/>

External DNS Name Server	
	Address
Name Server	<input type="text"/>

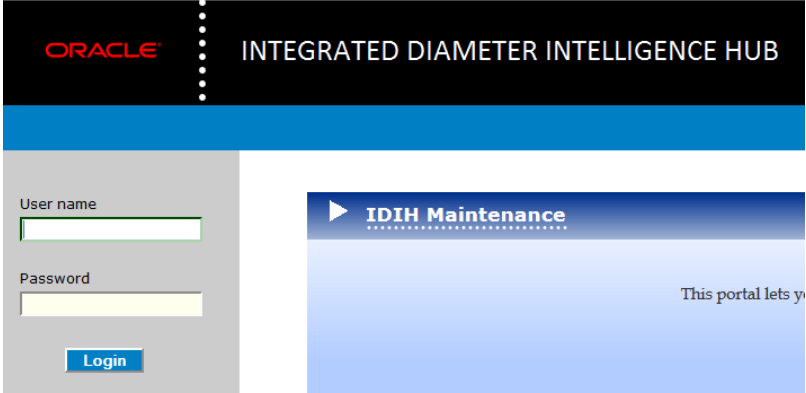
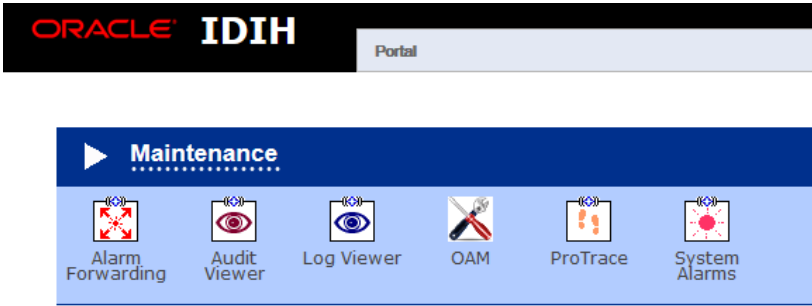
Domain Search Order	
	Domain Name
Search Domain 1	<input type="text"/>

If values have already been configured, select the **Cancel** button; otherwise configure the above values and select the **Ok** button.

Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Establish SSO Local Zone</p>	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Access Control -> Certification Management</p>  <p>Select the Establish SSO Zone button</p>  <p>Enter a value for Zone Name:</p> <p>Zone Name <input type="text"/> * Name of the SSO-compatible local zone. [Range = A 1-15 character long string. Allowed characters are A-Z,a-z,0-9].</p> <p><input type="button" value="Ok"/> <input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> <p>Select the Ok button.</p> <p>Information for the new Certificate type of SSO Local is now displayed.</p> <p>Select the Report button.</p>  <p>The Certificate Report is displayed. Select and copy the encoded certificate text to the clipboard for future access.</p> <p>Example of Certificate report:</p> <pre> -----BEGIN CERTIFICATE----- MIICKzCCAdWgAwIBAgIJAovfSLNc3CeJMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAMHExCzAJBgNV BAYTAlVTMQswCQYDVQQIDAJQZzEQMA4GA1UEBwwHUWmFsZWlnaDEPMA0GA1UECgwG T3JhY2x1MQswCQYDVQQIDAJQZzEQMA4GA1UEAwwHTGlicXJ0eTETMBEGCSqGSIb3 DQEJARYEdGVzdDAeFw0xNDA1MDQxNDIzNTRaFw0xNjA1MDMxNDIzNTRaMHExCzAJ BgNVBAYTAlVTMQswCQYDVQQIDAJQZzEQMA4GA1UEBwwHUWmFsZWlnaDEPMA0GA1UE CgwGT3JhY2x1MQswCQYDVQQIDAJQZzEQMA4GA1UEAwwHTGlicXJ0eTETMBEGCSqG SIb3DQEJARYEdGVzdDBcMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUAA0sAMEgCQQCZ/MpkhlvMP/iJ s5xDO2MwxJm3jYim43H8gR9pfBTMNP6L9kluJYi+2T0hngJFQLpIn6SK6pXnuAGY f/vDwfqPaGMBAAgjUDBOMB0GA1UdDgQWBBS6IzIOLPlgizQ6+BERr8Fo2XyDVDAf BgNVHSMEGDAWgBS6IzIOLPlgizQ6+BERr8Fo2XyDVDAWBgNVHRMERTADAQH/MA0G CSqGSIb3DQEBCwUAA0EAOwIqBMEQyvfvt38r/yfgIx3w5dN8SBwHjHC5TpJrHV6U zFlg5dfzoLz7ditjGohWJ9l9VRw39LQ8lKfp7SMXwA== -----END CERTIFICATE----- </pre>
--	--	--

Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH Application Server GUI: Login</p>	<p>Establish a GUI session on the IDIH app server:</p> <p>Login as the <i>idihadmin</i> user:</p> 
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH Application Server GUI: Launch the OAM portal</p>	<p>Navigate to the OAM portal Icon to Launch the OAM web application:</p> 

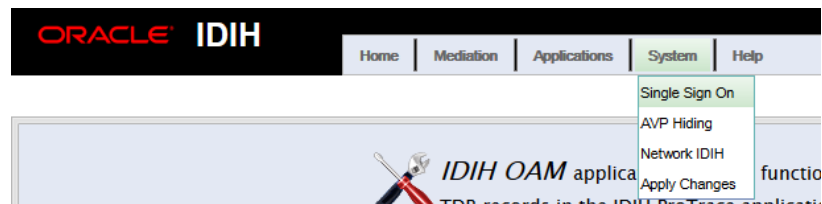
Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

6

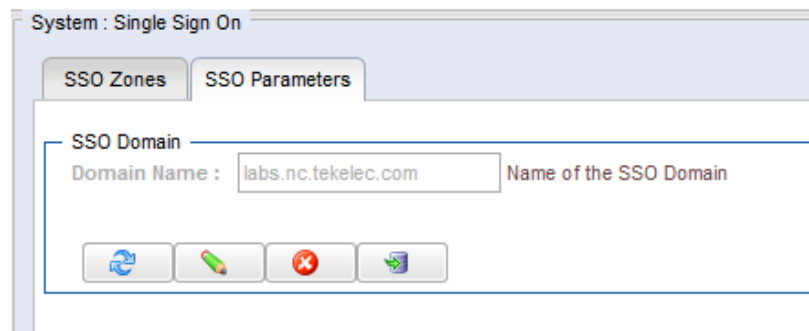


IDIH Application Server GUI:
Configure the SSO Domain

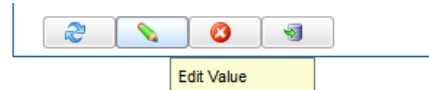
Navigate to **System -> Single Sign on**



Select the **SSO Parameters** Tab



Select the **Edit Value** Icon Button



Enter a value for the Domain Name.

Note: This should be the same domain name assigned in the DSR NOAM DNS Configuration (**Step 2**)

Select the **Save** icon button.



Select the **Refresh** icon button to display data saved for the Remote Zone.



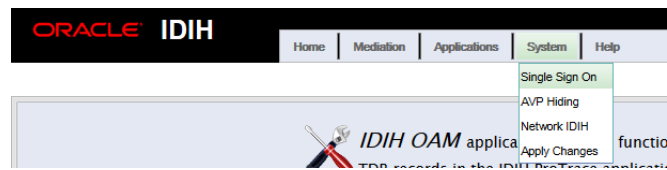
Procedure 33 IDIH Configuration: Configuring the SSO Domain (DSR 7.1-Optional)

7

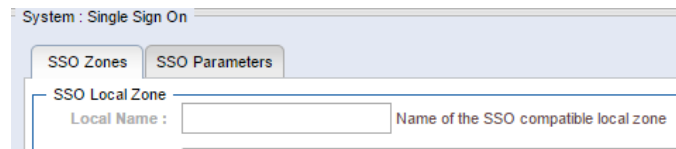


DIH Application Server GUI:
Configure the SSO Remote Zone

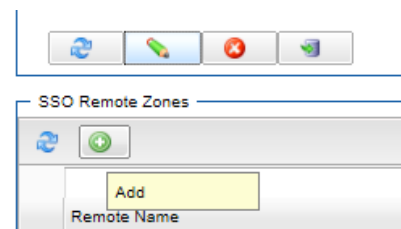
Navigate to **System -> Single Sign on**



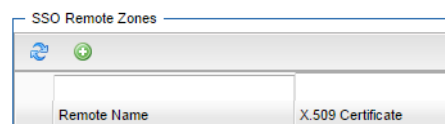
Select the **SSO Zones** Tab



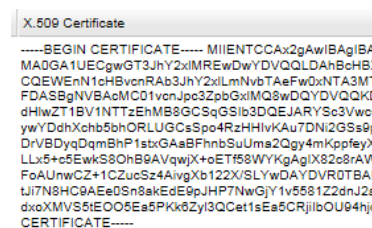
Select the **Add** icon button



Enter a value for field **Remote Name**



For field **X.509 Certificate**, paste the encoded certificate text from the clipboard that was previously copied from the DSR NOAM.



Select the **save** icon



Select the **Refresh** icon to display the data saved for remote zone.



4.14.2.3 IDIH Configuration: Configuring IDIH in the DSR

Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional)

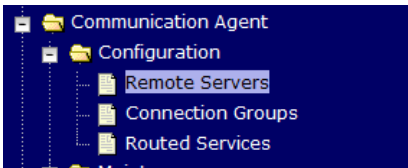
S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to complete the IDIH integration on the DSR.</p> <p>Note: For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>NOAM VIP GUI: Login</p> <p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div><p>https://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></p></div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div></div>

Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional)

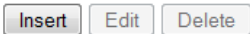
2

NOAM VIP GUI:
Configure
CommAgent
Connection

Navigate to **Main Menu -> Communication Agent -> Configuration -> Remote Servers**



Select the **Insert** button



Add the IDIH Mediation Server

For the Remote Server IP address field, enter the IMI IP address of the IDIH Mediation Server.

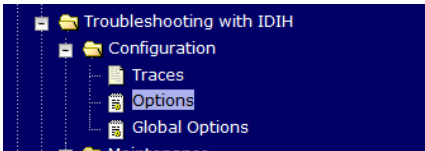
Field	Value
Remote Server Name	<input type="text"/>
Remote Server IPv4 IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Remote Server IPv6 IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Remote Server Mode	-- Select --
IP Address Preference	ComAgent Network Preference

Set the Remote Server Mode to **Server**

Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional)

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	SOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div>https://<Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address></div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p> <div></div>
-------------------------------	----------------------------	---

Procedure 34 IDIH Configuration: Configure IDIH in the DSR (DSR 7.1-Optional)

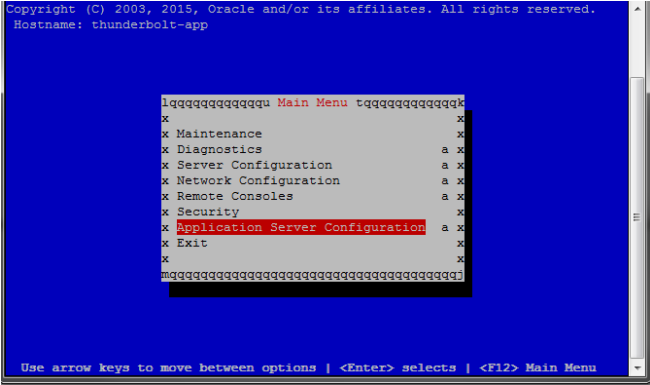
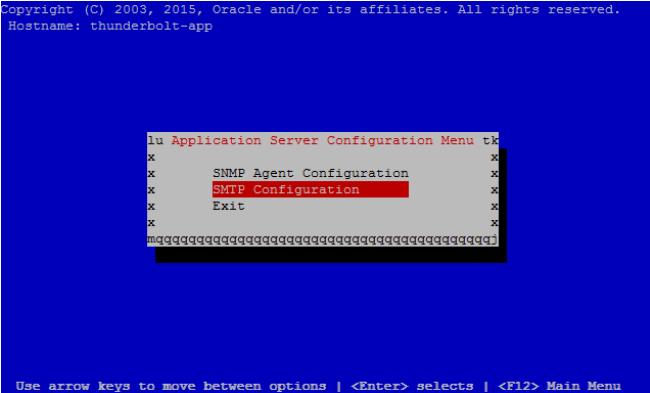
<div>4</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	SOAM VIP GUI: Configure IDIH Hostname	<p>Navigate to Main Menu -> Diameter -> Troubleshooting with IDIH -> Configuration -> Options</p>  <p>Enter the fully qualified IDIH host name in the IDIH Visualization Address field:</p> <p>Main Menu: Diameter -> Troubleshooting with IDIH -> Configuration -> Options</p> <hr/> <p>IDIH Configuration</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Field</th><th>Value</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Max bandwidth</td><td>25 *</td><td>Maximum amount of bandwidth specified in Mbps that is used for s maximum, Node will discard TTRs so that the bandwidth required t the configured maximum. [Default = 25Mbps (26214400 bps); Range = 0-25]</td></tr> <tr> <td>IDIH Host Name</td><td>- Select -</td><td>The Host Name of the peer IDIH server used for sending the mess; [Default = n/a].</td></tr> <tr> <td>IDIH Visualization address</td><td>100.65.135.179</td><td>The IP address or FQDN of the remote IDIH server that visualizes th "Maintenance" screen). If an IP address is used in place of a FQDN then IDIH SSO function [Default=n/a].</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p style="text-align: right;"><input type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></p> <p>Click the Apply button</p>	Field	Value	Description	Max bandwidth	25 *	Maximum amount of bandwidth specified in Mbps that is used for s maximum, Node will discard TTRs so that the bandwidth required t the configured maximum. [Default = 25Mbps (26214400 bps); Range = 0-25]	IDIH Host Name	- Select -	The Host Name of the peer IDIH server used for sending the mess; [Default = n/a].	IDIH Visualization address	100.65.135.179	The IP address or FQDN of the remote IDIH server that visualizes th "Maintenance" screen). If an IP address is used in place of a FQDN then IDIH SSO function [Default=n/a].
Field	Value	Description												
Max bandwidth	25 *	Maximum amount of bandwidth specified in Mbps that is used for s maximum, Node will discard TTRs so that the bandwidth required t the configured maximum. [Default = 25Mbps (26214400 bps); Range = 0-25]												
IDIH Host Name	- Select -	The Host Name of the peer IDIH server used for sending the mess; [Default = n/a].												
IDIH Visualization address	100.65.135.179	The IP address or FQDN of the remote IDIH server that visualizes th "Maintenance" screen). If an IP address is used in place of a FQDN then IDIH SSO function [Default=n/a].												

4.14.2.4 IDIH Configuration: Configuring Mail Server (Optional)

Procedure 35 IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

STEP #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SMTP mail server.</p> <p>Note: This procedure is optional; however, this option is required for Security (password initialization set to AUTOMATIC) and Forwarding (forwarding by mail filter defined) and is available only on the Application server.</p> <p>Note: For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
<div>1</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	IDIH Application Server: Login <p>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server, login as admusr.</p>

Procedure 35 IDIH Configuration: Configure Mail Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

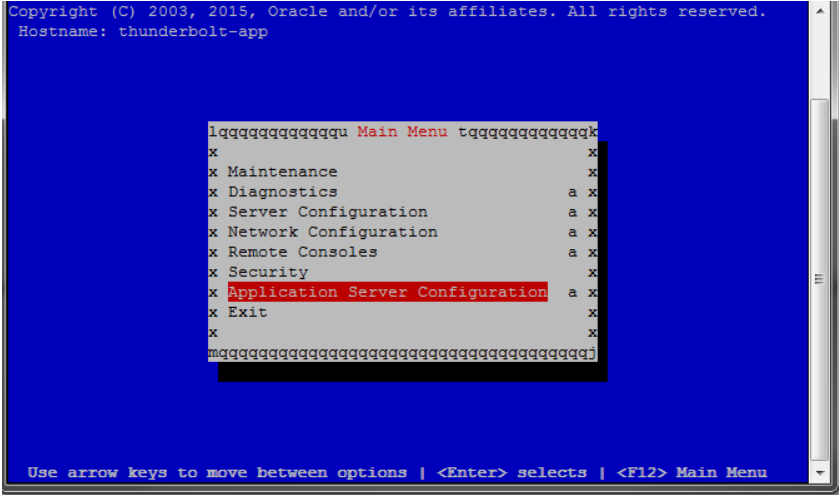
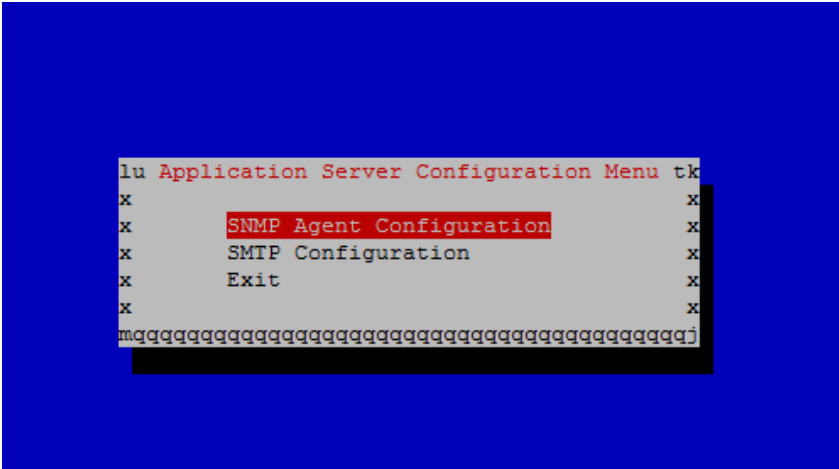
<div>2</div> <div></div>	<div>IDIH Application Server:</div> <div>Configure the Authenticated Mail Server</div>	<div>Enter the platcfg menu, execute the following command:</div> <div><div>\$ sudo su - platcfg</div></div> <div>Select Application Server Configuration</div> <div></div> <div>Select SMTP Configuration</div> <div></div> <div>Select Edit</div> <div>Enter the following parameters:</div> <div><ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Mail Server IP Address2. User3. Password4. Email Address (From)5. Mail smtp timeout6. Mail smtp connectiontimeout7. SNMP over SSL used?</div> <div>Select OK</div> <div>Select Exit to exit the platcfg menu</div>
--------------------------	---	---

4.14.2.5 IDIH Configuration: SNMP Management Server (Optional)

Procedure 36 IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to configure the SNMP management server.</p> <p>Note: This procedure is optional; however, this option is required for Forwarding (forwarding by SNMP filter defined) and is available only on the application server.</p> <p>Note: For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>		
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<table><tr><td>IDIH Application Server: Login</td><td>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server, login as admusr.</td></tr></table>	IDIH Application Server: Login	Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server, login as admusr .
IDIH Application Server: Login	Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Application Server, login as admusr .		

Procedure 36 IDIH Configuration: Configure SNMP Management Server-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

<div>2</div> <div></div>	<div>IDIH Application Server: Configure SNMP Management Server</div>	<div>Enter the platcfg menu, execute the following command:</div> <div><div>\$ sudo su - platcfg</div></div> <div>Select Application Server Configuration</div> <div></div> <div>Select SNMP Agent Configuration</div> <div></div> <div>Select Edit</div> <div>Enter the IP address of the SNMP Management Server</div> <div>Note: The SNMP agent configuration is updated and the SNMP Management server is automatically restarted.</div> <div>Select OK</div> <div>Select Exit to exit the platcfg menu.</div>
--------------------------	--	---

4.14.2.6 IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface (Optional)

Procedure 37 IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide the steps to change the default network interface</p> <p>Note: Initially the default network interface used to transport TTRs from DSR to DIH uses the internal imi network; however, this can be changed if required. It should be noted that changing this interface could degrade performance of TTR transmission.</p> <p>Note: A script is provided to manage the settings so that the operator doesn't need to know the details required to apply the settings. There are two settings 'interface.name' and 'interface.enabled'.</p> <p>When interface.enabled=True then communications over the 'interface.name =value', where value is the name of the network interface as defined on the platform, is the only specified interface that is used for communications.</p> <p>When 'interface.enabled=False' then communications over the named interface is not enforced, that is, all interfaces configured on the platform are allowed to be used for communications.</p> <p>For example, if it is required to use the xmi interface for communication instead of the default internal imi interface, then the operator would supply 'xmi' when prompted for the interface name and 'True' when prompted if interface filtering should be applied.</p> <p>Note: For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>		
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<table><tr><td>IDIH Mediation Server: Login</td><td><p>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Mediation Server. Login as user admusr.</p><p>Issue the following commands to login as tekelec user.</p><div><pre>\$ sudo su - tekelec</pre></div></td></tr></table>	IDIH Mediation Server: Login	<p>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Mediation Server. Login as user admusr.</p> <p>Issue the following commands to login as tekelec user.</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo su - tekelec</pre></div>
IDIH Mediation Server: Login	<p>Establish an SSH session to the IDIH Mediation Server. Login as user admusr.</p> <p>Issue the following commands to login as tekelec user.</p> <div><pre>\$ sudo su - tekelec</pre></div>		

Procedure 37 IDIH Configuration: Change Network Interface-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH Mediation Server: Execute the Change Interface Script	<p>Execute the change interface script with the following command:</p> <pre>\$ chgIntf.sh</pre> <p>Answer the following questions during execution of the script:</p> <p>This script is used to change the interface name (default = imi) used for mediation communications and whether to enable network interface filtering or not. Please answer the following questions or enter CTRL-C to exit out of the script.</p> <p>Current setting are: interface.name=imi interface.enabled=True</p> <p>Enter new network interface name, return to keep current [imi]: xmi</p> <p>Do you want to enable network interface filtering [True False], return to keep current [True]:</p> <p>Updating configuration properties file with 'interface.name=xmi' and 'interface.enable=True', and restarting mediation configuration bundle...</p>
-------------------------------	--	---

4.14.2.7 IDIH Configuration: Generate Disaster Recovery FDC File (Optional)

Procedure 38 IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

STEP #		<p>This procedure will provide the steps to generate a disaster recovery fdc file.</p> <p>Note: For DSR 7.0, refer to [25].</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify Backup Server	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TVOE • PMAC • DSR NOAM • DSR SOAM
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC: Establish Terminal Session	<p>Establish an SSH session to the PMAC. Login as admusr.</p>

Procedure 38 IDIH Configuration: Backup the upgrade and Disaster Recovery FDC File-Optional (DSR 7.1-Optional)

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC: Verify Upgrade fdc file exists	<p>Execute the following commands to verify the upgrade FDC file for IDIH exists:</p> <pre>\$ cd /var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin</pre> <pre>\$ ls -l *.xml</pre> <p>The following output is expected:</p> <pre>-rw-r----- 1 root smac 9542 May 11 09:43 <idih_install>.xml -rw-r----- 1 root smac 5107 May 11 09:43 <idih_upgrade>.xml</pre> <p>Note: The <idih_upgrade>.xml file is the same file used for upgrade and disaster recovery procedures.</p>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC: Transfer the FDC file to a remote server.	<p>Login to the backup server identified in step 1 and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@<PMAC_IP_Address>:/var/TKLC/smac/guest-dropin/<idih_upgrade.xml> /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press Enter.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p>

4.15 Post-Install Activities

Procedure 39 Activate Optional Features

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to install DSR optional components once regular installation is complete.</p> <p>Prerequisite: All previous DSR installation steps have been completed.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
----------------------------------	---

Procedure 39 Activate Optional Features

1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Refer to Activation Guides for Optional Features	Refer to 3.2 Optional Features for a list of feature activation documents whose procedures are to be executed at this moment.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Multi-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0 Only)	<p>To activate optional features in multi-site configurations for DR-NOAM and/or Spare SOAM servers, follow Appendix K: Multi-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0).</p> <p>Note: If the following configuration conditions apply, execute this step, otherwise skip this step:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none">1) DR-NOAM configurations (If Procedure 14 was executed)2) Spare SOAM configurations where the preferred spare was inserted into the server group BEFORE the active/Standby SOAM servers.

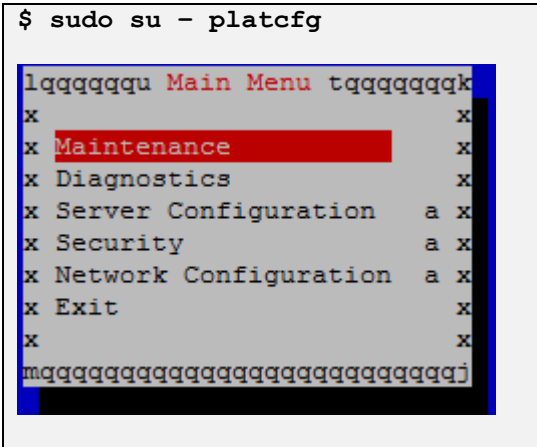
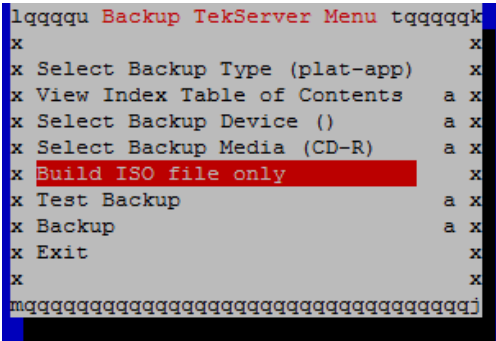
Procedure 40 Configure ComAgent Connections

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to configure ComAgent connections on DSR for use in the FABR application.</p> <p>Prerequisite: FABR application is activated.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Configure ComAgent	Refer to [11] for the steps required to configure ComAgent

Procedure 41 Backup TVOE Configuration

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up each TVOE rack mount server or Blade server after a successful installation.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify Backup Server	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• TVOE• PMAC• DSR NOAM• DSR SOAM
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	TVOE Server: Login	Establish an SSH session to the TVOE host server, login as admusr .

Procedure 41 Backup TVOE Configuration

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>TVOE Server: Build ISO backup file</p>	<p>Execute the following command from the TVOE server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre>  <p>Select the following menu options sequentially: Maintenance -> Backup and Restore ->Backup Platform (CD/DVD). The “Backup TekServer Menu” page will now be shown.</p> <p>Build the backup ISO image by selecting: Build ISO file only</p>  <p>Note: Creating the ISO image may happen so quickly that this screen may only appear for an instant.</p> <p>After the ISO is created, platcfg will return to the Backup TekServer Menu. The ISO has now been created and is located in the /var/TKLC/bkp/ directory. An example filename of a backup file that was created is: "hostname1307466752-plat-app-201104171705.iso"</p> <p>Exit out of platcfg by selecting Exit.</p>
--	--	---

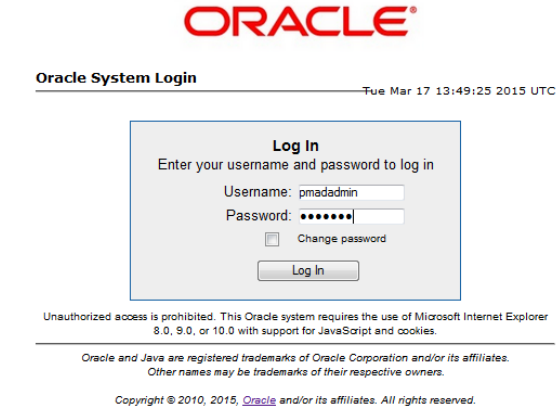
Procedure 41 Backup TVOE Configuration

<div>4</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	Backup Server: Transfer TVOE Files to Backup Server	<p>Login to the backup server identified in step 1 and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <pre>\$ sudo scp tvoexfer@<TVOE IP Address>:backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre> <p>When prompted, enter the tvoexfer user password and press Enter.</p> <p>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</p> <p>The TVOE backup file has now been successfully placed on the backup server.</p>
<div>5</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	Repeat for Additional TVOE Servers	Repeat steps 3-4 for additional TVOE servers

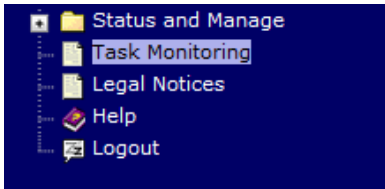
Procedure 42 Backup PMAC Application

STEP #	<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up each PMAC application installed in this procedure.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
<div>1</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	Identify Backup Server	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TVOE • PMAC • DSR NOAM • DSR SOAM
<div>2</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	PMAC Server: Login	Establish an SSH session to the PMAC server, login as admusr .


Procedure 42 Backup PMAC Application

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC Server: Build backup File</p>	<p>Execute the following command from the PMAC server:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/smac/bin/pmacadm backup</pre> <p>PM&C backup been successfully initiated as task ID 7</p> <p>Note: The backup runs as a background task. To check the status of the background task use the PMAC GUI Task Monitor page:</p> <p>or issue the command "pmaccli getBgTasks". The result should eventually be "PMAC Backup successful" and the background task should indicate "COMPLETE".</p>
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI: Login</p>	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <pre>http://<PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP></pre> <p>Login as pmacadmin user:</p> 

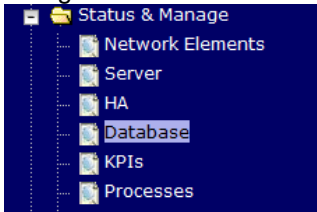
Procedure 42 Backup PMAC Application

5	<div><div></div><div>PMAC Server GUI: Monitor/Verify Backup Task Completion</div></div>	<div>Navigate to Main Menu -> Task Monitoring</div> <div></div> <div>Monitor the Backup PM&C Task:</div> <div><div>Background Task Monitoring</div><div><div>Filter</div><table><thead><tr><th></th><th>ID</th><th>Task</th><th>Target</th><th>Status</th><th>State</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td></td><td>181</td><td>Backup PM&C</td><td></td><td>PM&C Backup successful</td><td>COMPLETE</td></tr></tbody></table></div></div> <div><div>Note:</div> Alternatively, you can monitor the Backup task by executing the following command:</div> <div><div>\$ sudo pmaccli getBgTasks</div></div>		ID	Task	Target	Status	State		181	Backup PM&C		PM&C Backup successful	COMPLETE
	ID	Task	Target	Status	State									
	181	Backup PM&C		PM&C Backup successful	COMPLETE									
6	<div><div></div><div>Backup Server: Transfer PMAC File to Backup Server</div></div>	<div>Login to the backup server identified in step 1 and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</div> <div><div>\$ sudo scp admusr@<PMAC_IP_Address>:/var/TKLC/smac/backup/* /path/to/destination/</div></div> <div>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press Enter.</div> <div>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</div>												
5	<div><div></div><div>Repeat for Additional TVOE Servers</div></div>	<div>Repeat steps 2-6 for additional TVOE servers</div>												


Procedure 43 NOAM Database Backup

S T E P #		<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up the NOAM Database.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify Backup Server	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TVOE • PMAC • DSR NOAM • DSR SOAM
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	NOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the NOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the NOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p><code>http://<Primary_NOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></p> </div> <p>Login as the guiadmin user:</p> <div>  </div>

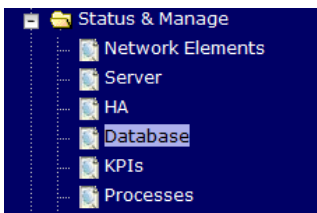
Procedure 43 NOAM Database Backup

<div>4</div> <div></div>	<div>NOAM VIP</div> <div>GUI: Perform Database Backup</div>	<div>Navigate to Main Menu -> Status & Manage -> Database</div> <div></div> <div>Select the Active NOAM</div> <div>Select the Backup Button:</div> <div><div>Disable Provisioning</div><div>Report</div><div>Inhibit Replication</div><div>Backup...</div><div>Compare...</div><div>Restore...</div><div>Man Audit</div><div>Suspend Auto Audit</div></div> <div>Select the desired file compression method</div> <div><div>Database Backup</div><table><tr><th>Field</th><th>Value</th></tr><tr><td>Server: Jetta-NO-1</td><td></td></tr><tr><td>Select data for backup</td><td><div><input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning</div><div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration</div></td></tr><tr><td>Compression</td><td><div><input type="radio"/> gzip</div><div><input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2</div><div><input type="radio"/> none *</div></td></tr><tr><td>Archive Name</td><td>Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415 *</td></tr><tr><td>Comment</td><td><div></div></td></tr></table><div><div>Ok</div><div>Cancel</div></div></div> <div><div>Select the archive file name if needed.</div><div>Select OK</div></div>	Field	Value	Server: Jetta-NO-1		Select data for backup	<div><input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning</div> <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration</div>	Compression	<div><input type="radio"/> gzip</div> <div><input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2</div> <div><input type="radio"/> none *</div>	Archive Name	Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415 *	Comment	<div></div>
Field	Value													
Server: Jetta-NO-1														
Select data for backup	<div><input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning</div> <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration</div>													
Compression	<div><input type="radio"/> gzip</div> <div><input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2</div> <div><input type="radio"/> none *</div>													
Archive Name	Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415 *													
Comment	<div></div>													
<div>6</div> <div></div>	<div>Backup Server:</div> <div>Transfer PMAC File to Backup Server</div>	<div>Login to the backup server identified in step 1 and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</div> <div><pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@<NOAM VIP>:/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre></div> <div><div>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press Enter.</div><div>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</div></div>												

Procedure 44 SOAM Database Backup

S T E P #		<p>This procedure will provide instruction on how to back up the SOAM Database.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Identify Backup Server	<p>Identify an external server to be used as a backup server for the following steps. The server should not be co-located with any of the following items:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TVOE • PMAC • DSR NOAM • DSR SOAM
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	SOAM VIP GUI: Login	<p>Establish a GUI session on the SOAM server by using the VIP IP address of the SOAM server. Open the web browser and enter a URL of:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;"> <p><code>http://<Primary_SOAM_VIP_IP_Address></code></p> </div> <p>Login as the <i>guiadmin</i> user:</p>  <p>Welcome to the Oracle System Login.</p> <p>Unauthorized access is prohibited. This Oracle system requires the use of Microsoft Internet Explorer 8.0, 9.0, or 10.0 with support for JavaScript and cookies.</p> <p>Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.</p>

Procedure 44 SOAM Database Backup

<div>4</div> <div><div></div></div>	<div><div>SOAM VIP</div><div>GUI: Perform Database Backup</div></div>	<div><div>Navigate to Main Menu -> Status & Manage -> Database</div><div></div><div>Select the Active SOAM</div><div>Select the Backup Button:</div><div><div>Disable Provisioning</div><div>Report</div><div>Inhibit Replication</div><div>Backup...</div><div>Compare...</div><div>Restore...</div><div>Man Audit</div><div>Suspend Auto Audit</div></div><div>Select the desired file compression method</div><div><div>Database Backup</div><table><tr><th>Field</th><th>Value</th></tr><tr><td colspan="2">Server: Jetta-NO-1</td></tr><tr><td>Select data for backup</td><td><div><input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning</div><div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration</div></td></tr><tr><td>Compression</td><td><div><input type="radio"/> gzip</div><div><input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2</div><div><input type="radio"/> none *</div></td></tr><tr><td>Archive Name</td><td>Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415 *</td></tr><tr><td>Comment</td><td><div></div></td></tr></table><div><div>Ok</div><div>Cancel</div></div></div><div>Set the archive file name if needed.</div><div>Select OK</div></div>	Field	Value	Server: Jetta-NO-1		Select data for backup	<div><input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning</div> <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration</div>	Compression	<div><input type="radio"/> gzip</div> <div><input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2</div> <div><input type="radio"/> none *</div>	Archive Name	Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415 *	Comment	<div></div>
Field	Value													
Server: Jetta-NO-1														
Select data for backup	<div><input type="checkbox"/> Provisioning</div> <div><input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Configuration</div>													
Compression	<div><input type="radio"/> gzip</div> <div><input checked="" type="radio"/> bzip2</div> <div><input type="radio"/> none *</div>													
Archive Name	Backup.dsr.Jetta-NO-1.Configuration.NETWORK_OAMP.20150505_12415 *													
Comment	<div></div>													
<div>6</div> <div><div></div></div>	<div><div>Backup Server:</div><div>Transfer PMAC File to Backup Server</div></div>	<div><div>Login to the backup server identified in step 1 and copy backup image to the customer server where it can be safely stored. If the customer system is a Linux system, please execute the following command to copy the backup image to the customer system.</div><div><div><pre>\$ sudo scp admusr@<SOAM VIP>:/var/TKLC/db/filemgmt/backup/* /path/to/destination/</pre></div></div><div>When prompted, enter the admusr user password and press Enter.</div><div>If the Customer System is a Windows system please refer to reference [3] (DSR 7.0)/ [26] (DSR 7.1) Using WinSCP to copy the backup image to the customer system.</div></div>												

Procedure 44 SOAM Database Backup

6 <input type="checkbox"/>	Repeat for Additional TVOE Servers	Repeat steps 2-6 for additional SOAM Sites
-------------------------------	---	---



DSR 7.1 Only: Before configuring Diameter connections (SCTP Only), please refer to

Appendix N: Disable/Enable DTLS

Appendix A: Sample Network Element and Hardware Profiles

In order to enter all the network information for a network element, a specially formatted XML file needs to be filled out with the required network information. The network information is needed to configure both the NOAM and any SOAM Network Elements.

It is expected that the maintainer/creator of this file has networking knowledge of this product and the customer site at which it is being installed. This network element XML file is used for DSR deployments using Cisco 4948 switches and HP c-Class blade servers. The following is an example of a Network Element XML file.

The SOAM Network Element XML file needs to have same network names for the networks as the NOAMP Network Element XML file has. It is easy to accidentally create different network names for NOAMP and SOAM Network Element, and then the mapping of services to networks will not be possible.

Figure 5 Example Network Element XML File

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<networkelement>
<name>NE</name>
<networks>
<network>
<name>INTERNALXMI</name>
<vlanId>3</vlanId>
<ip>10.2.0.0</ip>
<mask>255.255.255.0</mask>
<gateway>10.2.0.1</gateway>
<isDefault>true</isDefault>
</network>
<network>
<name>INTERNALIMI</name>
<vlanId>4</vlanId>
<ip>10.3.0.0</ip>
<mask>255.255.255.0</mask>
<nonRoutable>true</nonRoutable>
</network>
</networks>
</networkelement>
```

'nonRoutable' Field: By defining a network as 'nonRoutable' as seen above for INTERNALIMI, this means that the network shall not be routable outside the layer 3 boundary. This allows the user to define the same IP range in each SOAM site, and no duplicate IP check will be performed during server creation.

The server hardware information is needed to configure the Ethernet interfaces on the servers. This server hardware profile data XML file is used for DSR deployments using HP c-Class blade servers and HP c-Class rack-mount servers. It is supplied to the NOAM server so that the information can be pulled in and presented to the user in the GUI during server configuration. The following is an example of a Server Hardware Profile XML file.

Figure 6 Example Server Hardware Profile XML-HP c-Class Blade

```
<profile>
  <serverType>HP c-Class Blade</serverType>
  <available>
    <device>bond0</device>
  </available>
  <devices>
    <device>
      <name>bond0</name>
      <type>BONDING</type>
      <createBond>true</createBond>
      <slaves>
        <slave>eth01</slave>
        <slave>eth02</slave>
      </slaves>
      <option>
        <monitoring>mii</monitoring>
        <interval>100</interval>
        <upstream_delay>200</upstream_delay>
        <downstream_delay>200</downstream_delay>
      </option>
    </device>
  </devices>
</profile>
```

Figure 7 Example Server Hardware Profile XML- Virtual Guest on TVOE

```
<profile>
<serverType>TVOE Guest</serverType>
<available>
<device>Management</device>
<device>Control</device>
<device>xmi</device>
<device>imi</device>
<device>xsi</device>
</available>
<devices>
<device>
<name>management</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>control</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>xmi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>imi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
<device>
<name>xsi</name>
<type>ETHERNET</type>
</device>
</devices>
</profile>
```

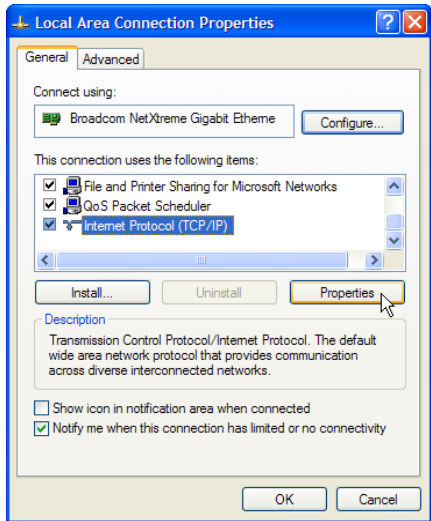
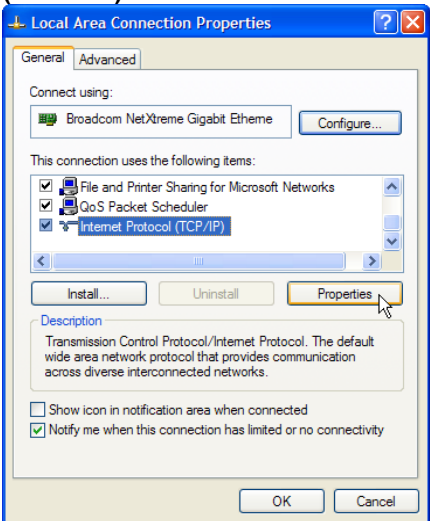

Appendix B: Configuring for TVOE iLO Access

Appendix B 1 Connecting to the TVOE iLO

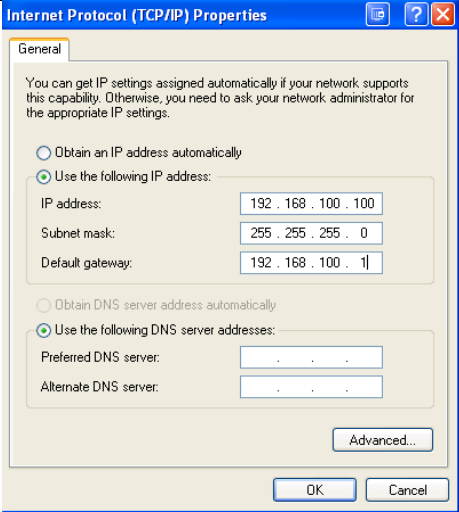
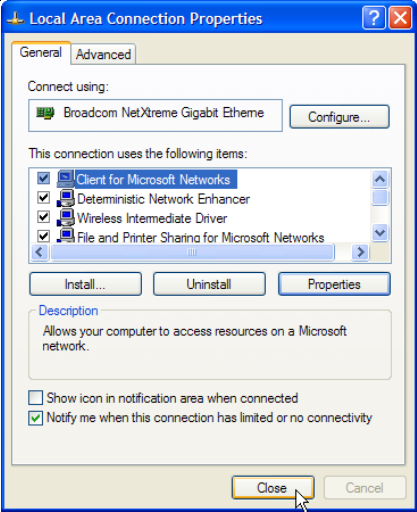
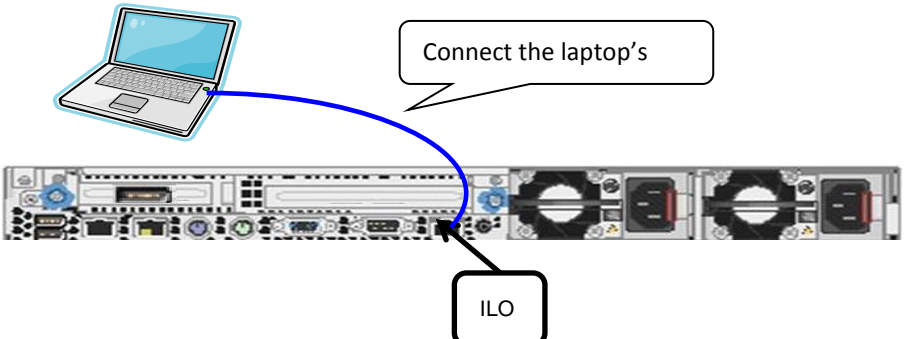
This procedure contains the steps to connect a laptop to the TVOE iLO via a directly cabled Ethernet connection.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result	
1	<p>Access the laptop network interface cards TCP/IP Properties screen.</p> <p>NOTE: For this step follow the instruction specific to the laptop's OS (XP or 7).</p>	<p>Windows XP</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Go to Control Panel Double-click on Network Connections Right-click the wired Ethernet Interface icon and select Properties Select Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) <p>Select Properties</p> 	<p>Windows 7</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Go to Control Panel. Double-click on Network and Sharing Center Select Change Adapter Settings (left menu) Right-click the Local Area Connection icon and select Properties <p>Select Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)</p> 

Appendix B 1 Connecting to the TVOE iLO

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Click Use the following IP address</p> <p>Set the IP address to 192.168.100.100</p> <p>Set the Subnet mask to 255.255.255.0</p> <p>Set the Default gateway to 192.168.100.1</p> <p>Select OK.</p> <p>Select Close from the network interface card's main Properties screen.</p>	<div>  </div> <div>  </div>
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Connect the laptop's Ethernet port directly to the TVOE iLO port using a standard Cat-5 cross-over cable.</p>	

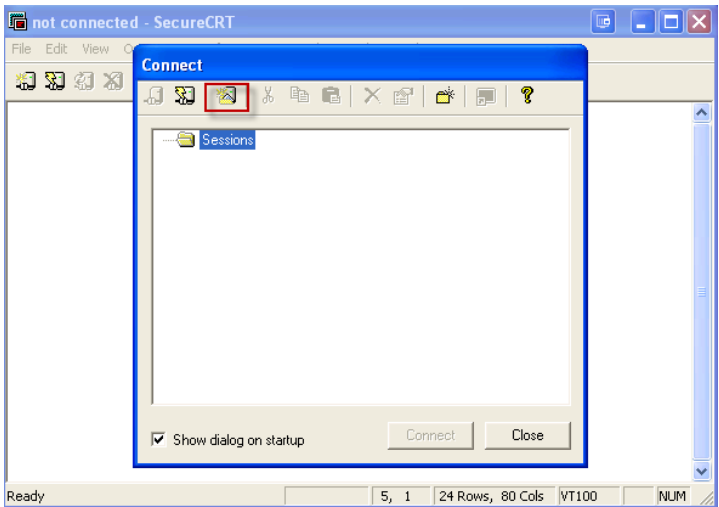
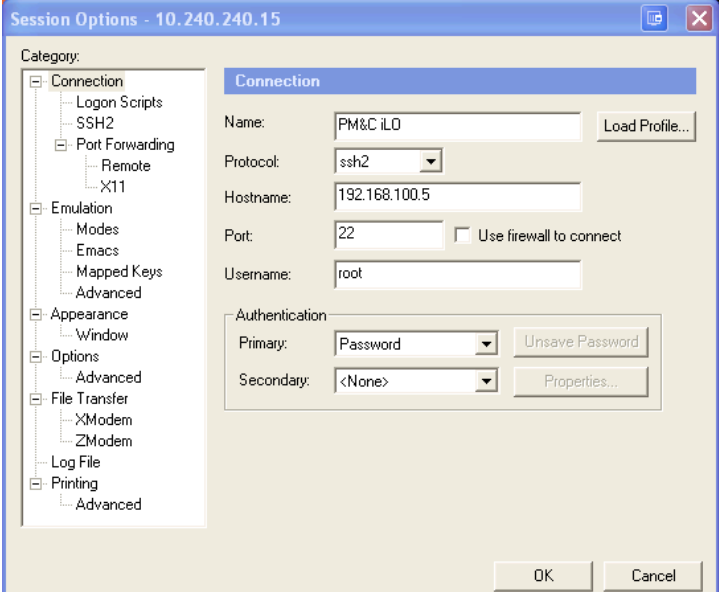
Appendix C: TVOE iLO Access

Appendix C 1 Accessing the TVOE iLO

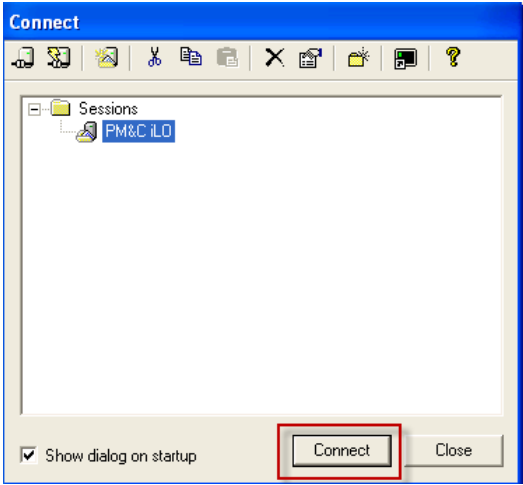
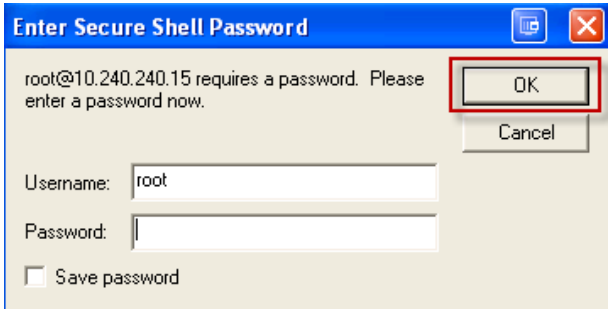
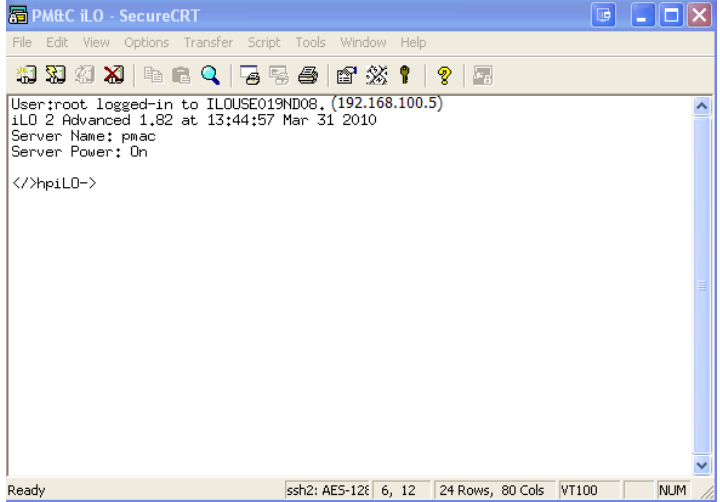
This procedure contains the steps to access the TVOE iLO.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Launch a terminal emulator, e.g. Putty, Secure CRT.</p> <p>Navigate to File -> Connect</p> <p>Click on the New Session icon.</p> <p>Note: This example demonstrates Secure CRT.</p>	
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Enter TVOE iLO for Name 192.168.100.5(Manufacturing default) or customer IP set during installation for Hostname.</p> <p>Enter admusr for Username.</p> <p>Click OK</p> <p>Note: See Appendix B: Configuring for TVOE iLO Access to configure your system network to access the TVOE iLO.</p>	

Appendix C 1 Accessing the TVOE iLO

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Navigate File -> Connect to open the Connect window.</p> <p>Highlight the session you created and click Connect.</p>	
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Login to the TVOE iLO using the appropriate password.</p>	
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>The TVOE iLO is displayed.</p>	

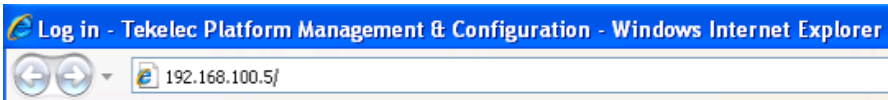
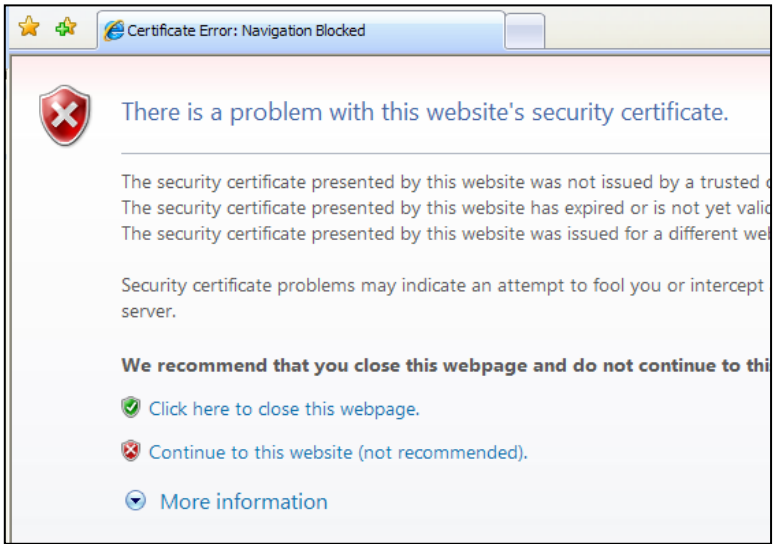
Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 Access

Appendix D 1 TVOE iLO4 GUI Access

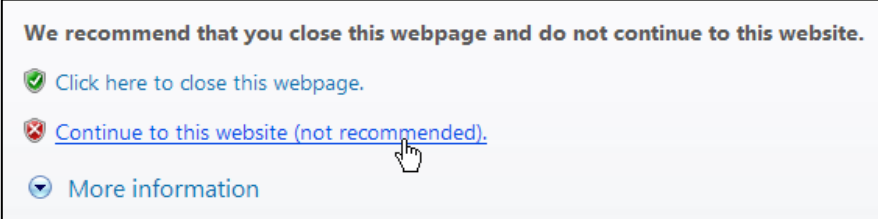
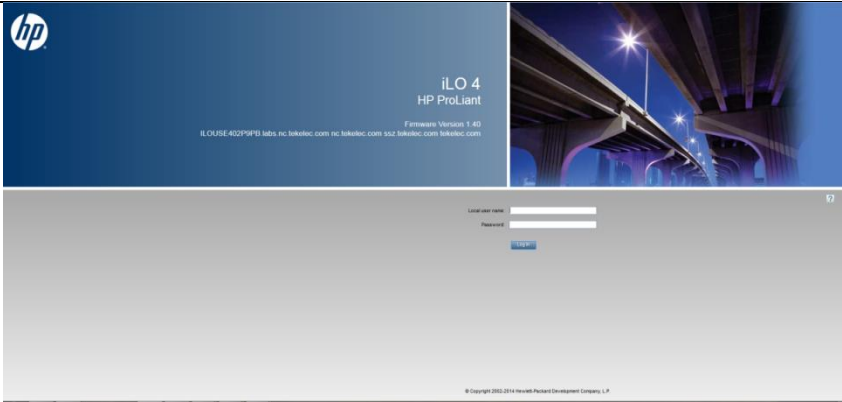
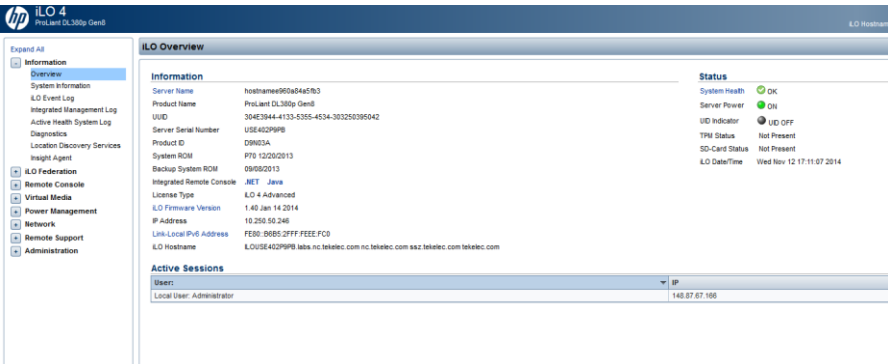
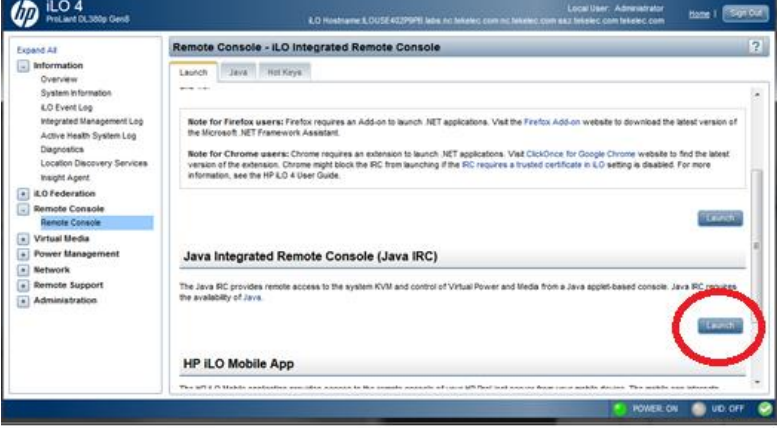
This procedure contains the steps to access the TVOE iLO4 GUI.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Launch Internet Explorer</p> <p>Navigate to 192.168.100.5 (manufacturing default) or customer IP set during installation.</p>	
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Internet Explorer may display a warning message regarding the Security Certificate.</p>	

Appendix D 1 TVOE iLO4 GUI Access

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Select the option to Continue to the website (not recommended)</p>	
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Log in to the iLO4</p>	
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>The iLO4 Home page is displayed.</p>	
<p>6</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Click on Launch to start the PMAC iLO4 CLI</p>	


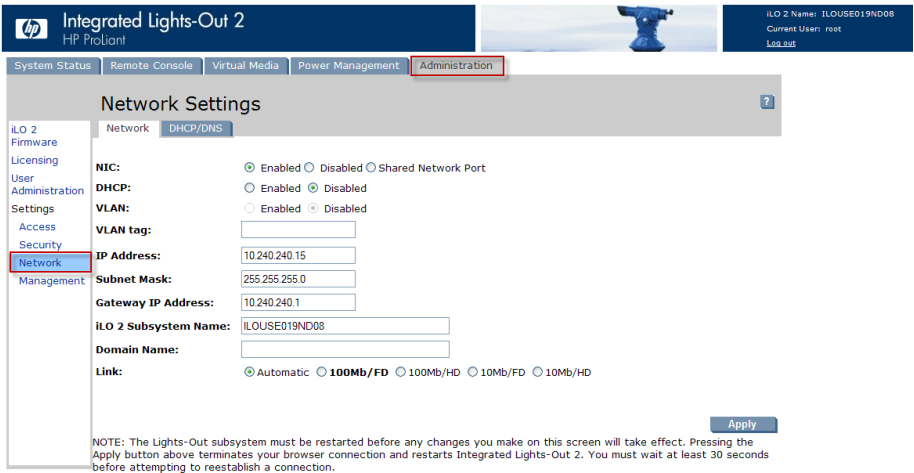
Appendix E: Changing the TVOE iLO Address

Appendix E 1 Changing the TVOE iLO Address

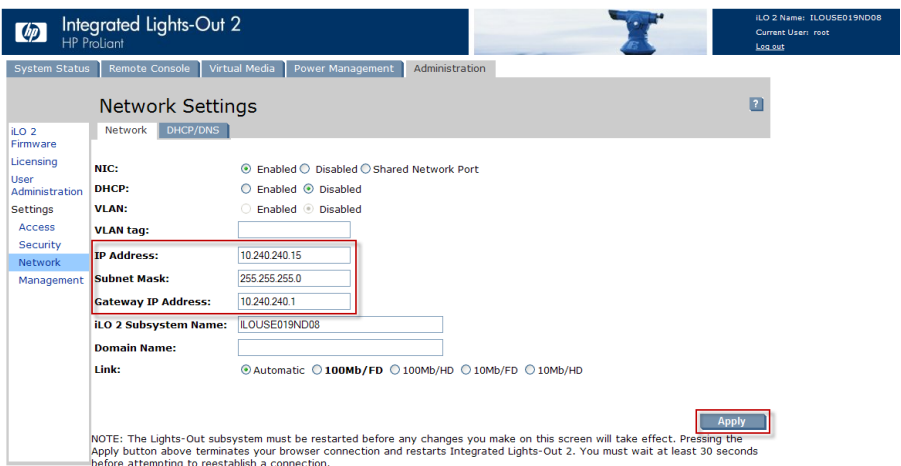
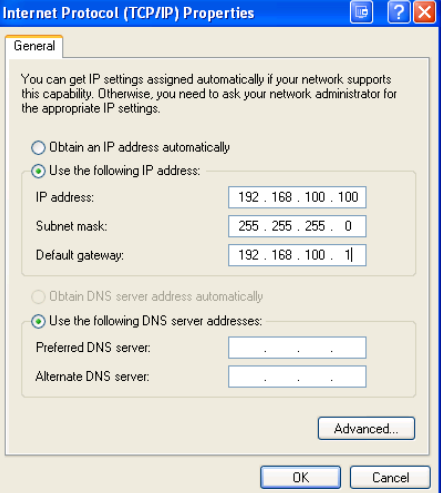

This procedure will set the IP address of the TVOE iLO to the customer's network so that it can be accessed by Oracle support.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Connect to the TVOE iLO GUI using the instructions in Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 Access	
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Click the Administration tab. Under Settings in the left column click on Network .	

Appendix E 1 Changing the TVOE iLO Address

<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Change the IP Address, Subnet Mask and Gateway IP Address to the values supplied in the IP Site Survey for the TVOE iLO.</p> <p>Select Apply.</p> <p>Note: You will lose access after you hit the Apply button.</p>	
<p>4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Reset the PC's network connection replacing the Subnet Mask and Gateway with those just used for the TVOE iLO. Use an appropriate IP address for this subnet.</p>	
<p>5</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Connect to the TVOE iLO GUI using the instructions in Appendix D: TVOE iLO4 Access</p> <p>Note: Use the IP address entered in Step 3</p>	

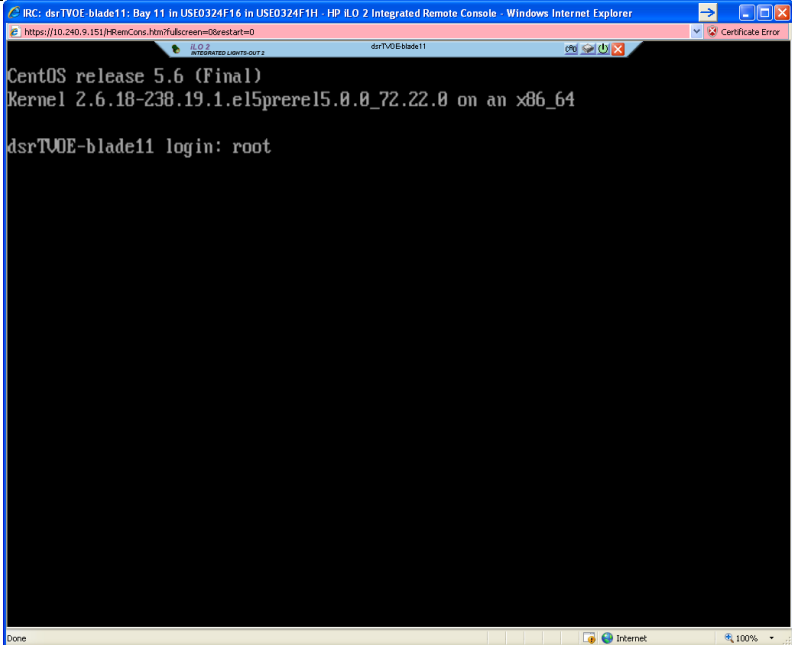
Appendix F: PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access

Appendix F 1 PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access

This procedure describes how to log into the PMAC/NOAM/SOAM console from ILO.

Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.

If this procedure fails, contact **Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)**, and ask for assistance.

STEP #	Procedure	Result
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Log in as admusr on the TVOE server hosting the NOAM using either ILO or SSH to the TVOE server's XMI or Mgmt. address	 A screenshot of a remote console session viewed through a Windows Internet Explorer browser. The browser title bar reads "IRC: dsrTVOE-blade11: Bay 11 in USE0324F16 in USE0324F1H - HP iLO 2 Integrated Remote Console - Windows Internet Explorer". The address bar shows "https://10.240.9.151/HPremCons.htm?Fullscreen=0&start=0". The main content area displays the output of a remote console session for "dsrTVOE-blade11". The text shown is: "CentOS release 5.6 (Final)", "Kernel 2.6.18-238.19.1.el5prere15.0.0_72.22.0 on an x86_64", and "dsrTVOE-blade11 login: root". The session is currently at the login prompt. The browser window has a "Certificate Error" icon in the top right corner. The status bar at the bottom of the browser shows "Done" and "Internet" with a 100% zoom level.

Appendix F 1 PMAC/NOAM/SOAM Console iLO Access

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>		<p>On the TVOE host, execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$sudo virsh list</pre> <p>This will produce a listing of currently running virtual machines.</p> <pre>[root@dsrTVOE-blade11 ~]# virsh list Id Name State ----- 4 DSR_NOAMP running [root@dsrTVOE-blade11 ~]# _</pre> <p>Find the VM name for your DSR NOAM and note its ID number in the first column.</p> <p>Note: If the VM state is not listed as “running” or you do not find a VM you configured for your NOAM at all, then halt this procedure and contact Oracle Customer Support.</p>
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Connect to console of the VM using the VM number obtained in Step 2.</p>	<p>On the TVOE host, execute:.</p> <pre>\$sudo virsh console <DSRNOAM-VMID></pre> <p>Where DSRNOAM-VMID is the VM ID you obtained in Step 2:</p> <pre>Connected to domain DSR_NOAMP Escape character is ^] CentOS release 5.6 (Final) Kernel 2.6.18-238.19.1.el5prere15.0.0_72.22.0 on an x86_64 hostname1322840832 login: _</pre> <p>You are now connected to the DSR NOAMs console.</p> <p>If you wish to return to the TVOE host, you can exit the session by pressing CTRL +]</p>

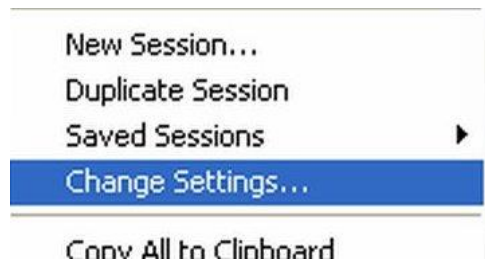
Appendix G: Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty

Appendix G 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty

S T E P #	<p>Note: This procedure assumes that the NOAM server you wish to create a tunnel to has been IPM'd with the DSR application ISO</p> <p>Note: This procedure assumes that you have exchanged SSH keys between the PMAC and the first NOAM server.</p> <p>Note: This procedure assumes that you have obtained the control network IP address for the first NOAM server. You can get this from the PMAC GUI's Software Inventory screen.</p> <p>That variable will be referred to as <NOAM-Control-IP> in these instructions.</p> <p>Note: It is recommended that you only use this procedure if you are using Windows XP. There are known issues with putty and Windows 7 that may cause unpredictable results when viewing GUI screens through SSH tunnels.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Log in to PMAC Server using PuTTY	Launch the PuTTY application from your station and open a session to the PMAC's management address. Login as <i>admusr</i>

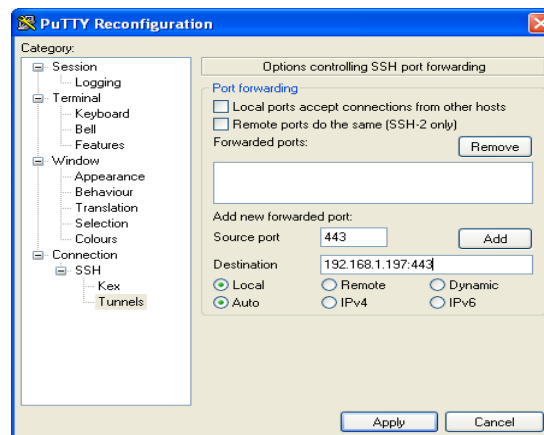
Appendix G 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty

2
□ **Create SSH Tunnel through the PMAC in PuTTY**



Click the icon in the upper left hand corner of the PuTTY window to bring down the **main menu**.

Select **Change Settings**
Select **Connections -> SSH -> Tunnels**

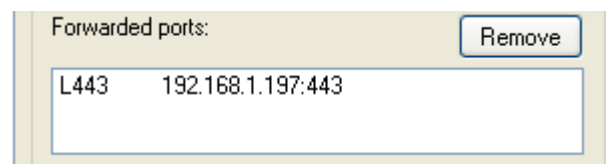


Verify that the **“Local”** and **“Auto”** buttons are selected. Leave other fields blank

In **Source Port**, enter **443**

In **Destination**, enter **<NOAM-Control-IP>:443**

Click **Add**




You should now see a display similar to the following in the text box at the center of this dialog.

Click **Apply**

Now establish the SSH session to the PMAC, login as **admusr**

Appendix G 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with Putty


3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Use Local Web Browser to Connect to GUI	<p>Using your web browser, navigate to the following URL:</p> <div><code>https://localhost/</code></div>  <p>You should arrive at the login screen for the NOAM GUI.</p> <p>Note: If using windows 7 and a blank screen is displayed, enable Compatibility Mode in IE, or use a different browser (Firefox or Chrome)</p>
-------------------------------	--	---

Appendix H: Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows

Appendix H 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows

S T E P #	<p>Note: This procedure assumes that the NOAMP server you wish to create a tunnel to has been IPM'd with the DSR application ISO</p> <p>Note: This procedure assumes that you have exchanged SSH keys between the PMAC and the first NOAMP server.</p> <p>Note: This procedure assumes that you have obtained the control network IP address for the first NOAMP server. You can get this from the PMAC GUI's Software Inventory screen. That variable will be referred to as <NOAM-Control-IP> in these instructions.</p> <p>Note: This is the recommended tunneling method if you are using Windows 7.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	If Needed, Download and Install OpenSSH for Windows	Download OpenSSH for Windows from here . Extract the installer from the ZIP file, then run the installer. openssh is now installed on your PC.
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Create SSH Tunnel Through the PMAC	<p>Open up a Command Prompt shell</p> <p>Within the command shell, enter the following to create the SSH tunnel to the 1st NO, through the PMAC:</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <pre>> ssh -L 443:<1st NO Control IP Address>:443 admusr@<PMAC_Management_IP_Address></pre> </div> <p>(Answer Yes if it asks if you want to continue connecting)</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px;"> <pre>C:\>ssh -L 443:192.168.1.14:443 root@10.240.9.132 The authenticity of host '10.240.9.132 (10.240.9.132)' can't be established. RSA key fingerprint is e0:f5:2c:bf:70:d9:a6:fd:42:74:83:09:a0:7a:da:0c. Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes Warning: Permanently added '10.240.9.132' (RSA) to the list of known hosts. root@10.240.9.132's password: Last login: Sat Mar 23 09:28:00 2013 from 10.26.15.162 [root@pmac-90006 ~]#</pre> </div> <p>The tunnel to the 1st NOAM is now established.</p>

Appendix H 1 Accessing the NOAM GUI using SSH Tunneling with OpenSSH for Windows

3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Use Local Web Browser to Connect to GUI	<p>Using your web browser, navigate to the following URL:</p> <div><code>https://localhost/</code></div>  <p>You should arrive at the login screen for the NOAM GUI.</p>
-------------------------------	---	---

Appendix I: List of Frequently used Time Zones

Table 4 Time Zones

Time Zone Value	Description	Universal Time Code (UTC) Offset
America/New_York	Eastern Time	UTC-05
America/Chicago	Central Time	UTC-06
America/Denver	Mountain Time	UTC-07
America/Phoenix	Mountain Standard Time - Arizona	UTC-07
America/Los_Angeles	Pacific Time	UTC-08
America/Anchorage	Alaska Time	UTC-09
Pacific/Honolulu	Hawaii	UTC-10
Africa/Johannesburg		UTC+02
America/Mexico_City	Central Time - most locations	UTC-06
Africa/Monrovia		UTC+00
Asia/Tokyo		UTC+09
America/Jamaica		UTC-05
Europe/Rome		UTC+01
Asia/Hong_Kong		UTC+08
Pacific/Guam		UTC+10
Europe/Athens		UTC+02
Europe/London		UTC+00
Europe/Paris		UTC+01
Europe/Madrid	mainland	UTC+01
Africa/Cairo		UTC+02
Europe/Copenhagen		UTC+01
Europe/Berlin		UTC+01
Europe/Prague		UTC+01
America/Vancouver	Pacific Time - west British Columbia	UTC-08
America/Edmonton	Mountain Time - Alberta, east British Columbia & westSaskatchewan	UTC-07
America/Toronto	Eastern Time - Ontario - most locations	UTC-05
America/Montreal	Eastern Time - Quebec - most locations	UTC-05
America/Sao_Paulo	South & Southeast Brazil	UTC-03
Europe/Brussels		UTC+01
Australia/Perth	Western Australia - most locations	UTC+08
Australia/Sydney	New South Wales - most locations	UTC+10
Asia/Seoul		UTC+09
Africa/Lagos		UTC+01
Europe/Warsaw		UTC+01
America/Puerto_Rico		UTC-04
Europe/Moscow	Moscow+00 - west Russia	UTC+04
Asia/Manila		UTC+08
Atlantic/Reykjavik		UTC+00
Asia/Jerusalem		UTC+02

Appendix J: Application NetBackup Client Installation Procedures

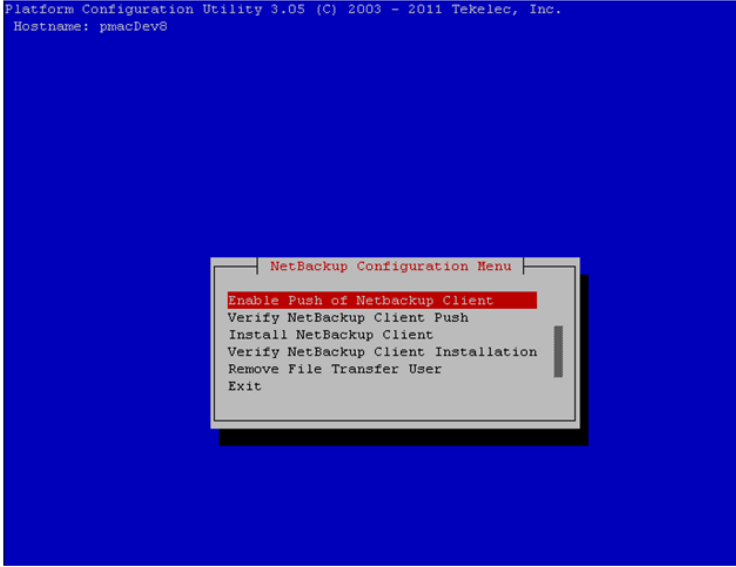
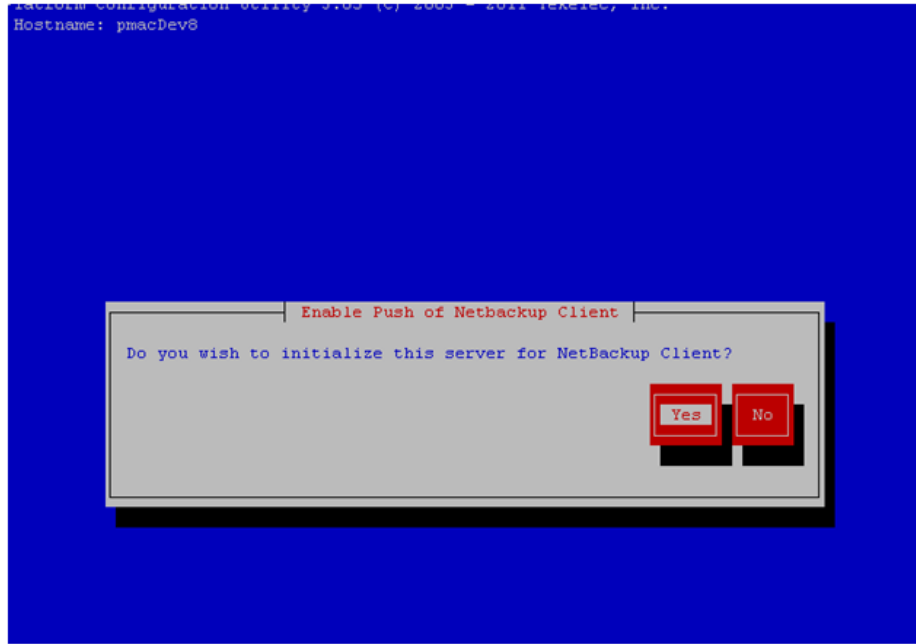
NetBackup is a utility that allows for management of backups and recovery of remote systems. The NetBackup suite is for the purpose of supporting Disaster Recovery at the customer site. The following procedures provides instructions for installing and configuring the NetBackup client software on an application server in two different ways, first using platcfg and second using nbAutoInstall (push Configuration)

NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL USING PLATCFG

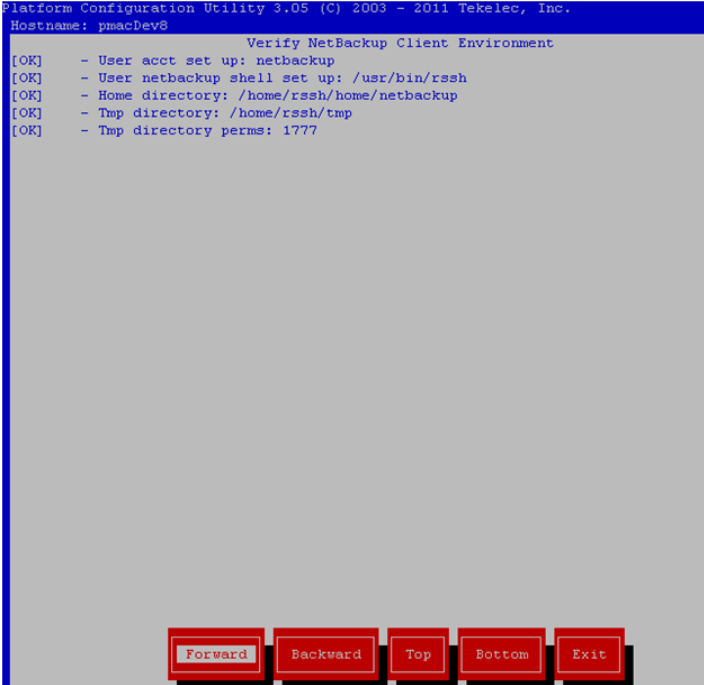
Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure explains the Netbackup installation using platcfg</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Application server platform installation has been completed.• Site survey has been performed to determine the network requirements for the application server, and interfaces have been configured.• NetBackup server is available to copy, sftp, the appropriate NetBackup Client software to the application server.• Execute Appendix A.3 of [26] (DSR 7.1) [3] (DSR 7.0) <p>Note: Execute the following procedure to switch/migrate to having netBackup installed via platcfg instead of using NBAutoInstall (<i>Push Configuration</i>)</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Application server iLO: Login	Login and launch the integrated remote console SSH to the application Server (PMAC or NOAM) as admusr using the management network for the PMAC or XMI network for the NOAM.

Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Application server iLO: Navigate to NetBackup Configuration</p>	<p>Configure NetBackup Client on application server</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>Navigate to NetBackup -> Configuration</p> 
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Application server iLO: Enable Push of NetBackup Client</p>	<p>Navigate to NetBackup Configuration -> Enable Push of NetBackup Client</p> 

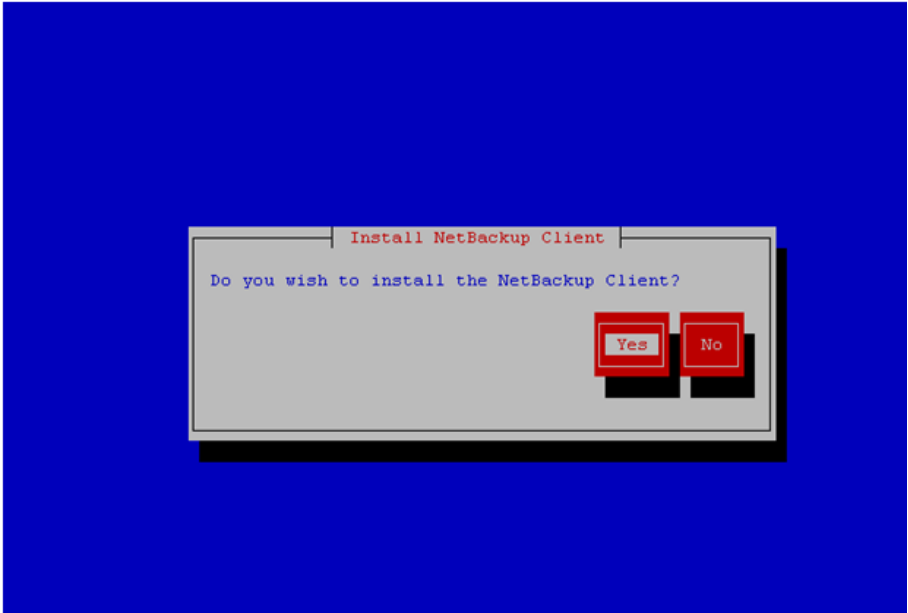
Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

<div>4</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<p>Application server iLO: Verify NetBackup Client software push is enabled.</p>	<p>Navigate to NetBackup Configuration -> Verify NetBackup Client Push</p>  <p>Verify list entries indicate OK for NetBackup client software environment. Select Exit to return to NetBackup Configuration menu.</p>
--	---	--


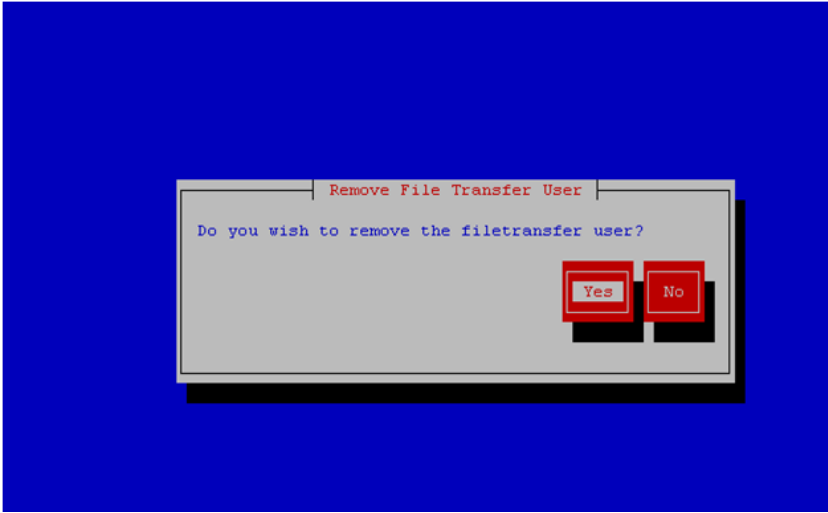
Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

<p>5</p> <p>□</p>	<p>NetBackup server: Push appropriate NetBackup Client software to application server</p>	<p>Note: The NetBackup server is not an application asset. Access to the NetBackup server and location path of the NetBackup Client software is under the control of the customer. Below are the steps that are required on the NetBackup server to push the NetBackup Client software to the application server. These example steps assume the NetBackup server is executing in a Linux environment.</p> <p>Note: The backup server is supported by the customer, and the backup utility software provider. If this procedural STEP, executed at the backup utility server, fails to execute successfully, STOP and contact the Customer Care Center of the backup and restore utility software provider that is being used at this site.</p> <p>Login to the NetBackup server using password provided by customer:</p> <p>Navigate to the appropriate NetBackup Client software path:</p> <p>Note: The input below is only used as an example. (7.5 in the path below refer to the NetBackup version. If installed a different version (e.g. 7.1 or 7.6), replace 7.5 with 7.1 or 7.6)</p> <pre>\$ cd /usr/opensv/netbackup/client/Linux/7.5</pre> <p>Execute the sftp_to client NetBackup utility using the application IP address and application netbackup user:</p> <pre>\$./sftp_to_client <application IP> netbackup Connecting to 192.168.176.31 netbackup@192.168.176.31's password:</pre> <p>Enter application server netbackup user password; the following NetBackup software output is expected, observe the sftp completed successfully:</p> <pre>File "/usr/opensv/netbackup/client/Linux/6.5/.sizes" not found. Couldn't rename file "/tmp/bp.6211/sizes" to "/tmp/bp.6211/.sizes": No such file or directory File "/usr/opensv/NB-Java.tar.Z" not found. ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected ./sftp_to_client: line 793: [: : integer expression expected sftp completed successfully.</pre> <p>The user on 192.168.176.31 must now execute the following command:</p> <pre>\$ sh /tmp/bp.6211/client_config [-L].</pre> <p>Note: Although the command executed above instructs you to execute the client_config command, DO NOT execute that command, as it shall be executed by platcfg in the next step.</p> <p>Note: The optional argument, "-L", is used to avoid modification of the client's current bp.conf file</p>
-------------------	--	---

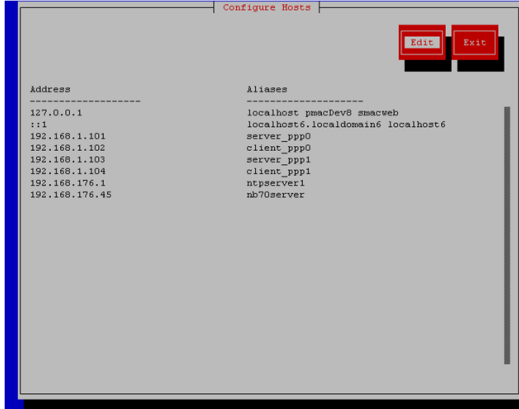
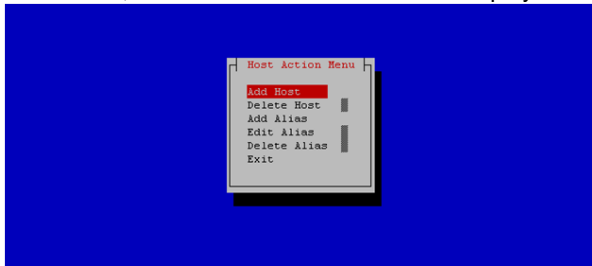

Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

<div>6</div> <div><input type="checkbox"/></div>	<p>Application server iLO: Install NetBackup Client software on application server.</p>	<p>Execute the command:</p> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 555 /var/TKLC/home/rssh/tmp/client_config</pre> <p>Where NETBACKUP_BIN is the temporary directory where the netbackup client install programs were copied in step 5. The directory should look similar to the following: "/tmp/bp.XXXX/"</p> <p>Navigate to NetBackup Configuration -> Install NetBackup Client</p>  <p>Verify list entries indicate OK for NetBackup client software installation</p> <p>Select Exit to return to NetBackup Configuration menu</p>
--	--	---

Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

<p>7</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Application server iLO: Verify NetBackup CLient software installation on the application server.</p>	<p>Navigate to NetBackup Configuration -> Verify NetBackup Client Installation.</p>  <p>Verify list entries indicate OK for NetBackup Client software installation. Select Exit to return to NetBackup Configuration menu.</p>
<p>8</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Application server iLO: Disable NetBackup Client software transfer to the application server.</p>	<p>Navigate to NetBackup Configuration -> Remove File Transfer User</p>  <p>Select Yes to remove the NetBackup file transfer user from the application server</p>
<p>9</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Application server iLO: Exit platform configuration utility (platcfg)</p>	<p>Exit platform configuration utility (platcfg)</p>

Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

<p>10</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>Application server iLO: Use platform configuration utility (platcfg) to modify hosts file with NetBackup server alias.</p>	<p>Note: After the successful transfer and installation of the NetBackup client software the NetBackup servers hostname can be found in the NetBackup "/usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf" file, identified by the SERVER configuration parameter.</p> <p>The NetBackup server hostname and IP address must be added to the application server's host's file. List NetBackup servers hostname:</p> <pre>\$ sudo cat /usr/openv/netbackup/bp.conf SERVER = nb70server CLIENT_NAME = pmacDev8</pre> <p>Use platform configuration utility (platcfg) to update application hosts file with NetBackup Server alias.</p> <pre>\$ sudo su - platcfg</pre> <p>Navigate to Network Configuration -> Modify Hosts File</p>  <p>Select Edit, the Host Action Menu will be displayed.</p>  <p>Select Add Host, and enter the appropriate data</p>  <p>Select OK, confirm the host alias add, and exit Platform Configuration Utility</p>
---	--	---

Appendix J 1 Application NetBackup Client Installation (Using Platcfg)

11 <input type="checkbox"/>	Application server iLO: Create links to NetBackup client notify scripts on application server where NetBackup expects to find them.	Copy the notify scripts from appropriate path on application server for given application: <pre>\$ sudo ln -s <path>/bpstart_notify /usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bpstart_notify</pre> <pre>\$ sudo ln -s <path>/bpend_notify /usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bpend_notify</pre> <p>An example of <path> is "/usr/TKLC/appworks/sbin"</p>
--------------------------------	---	--

NETBACKUP CLIENT INSTALL/UPGRADE WITH NBAUTOINSTALL

Note: Execute the following procedure to switch/migrate to having netBackup installed via NBAutoInstall (*Push Configuration*) instead of manual installation using platcfg

Note: Executing this procedure will enable TPD to automatically detect when a Netbackup Client is installed and then complete TPD related tasks that are needed for effective Netbackup Client operation. With this procedure, the Netbackup Client install (pushing the client and performing the install) is the responsibility of the customer and is not covered in this procedure.

Appendix J 2 Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL)

STEP #	<p>This procedure explains the Netbackup installation with NBAUTOINSTALL</p> <p>Prerequisites:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Application server platform installation has been completed. • Site survey has been performed to determine the network requirements for the application server, and interfaces have been configured. • NetBackup server is available to copy, sftp, the appropriate NetBackup Client software to the application server. <p>Note: If the customer does not have a way to push and install Netbackup Client, then use Netbackup Client Install/Upgrade with platcfg.</p> <p>Note: It is required that this procedure is executed before the customer does the Netbackup Client install.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Application server iLO: Login</p> <p>Login and launch the integrated remote console.</p> <p>SSH to the application Server (PMAC or NOAM) as admusr using the management network for the PMAC or XMI network for the NOAM.</p>

Appendix J 2 Application NetBackup Client Installation (NBAUTOINSTALL)

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Application server iLO: Enable nbAutoInstall	Execute the following command: <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/bin/nbAutoInstall --enable</pre>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Application server iLO: Create links to NetBackup client notify scripts on application server where NetBackup expects to find them.	Execute the following commands <pre>\$ sudo mkdir -p /usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/ \$ sudo ln -s <path>/bpstart_notify /usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bpstart_notify \$ sudo ln -s <path>/bpend_notify /usr/opensv/netbackup/bin/bpend_notify</pre> Note: An example of <path> is "/usr/TKLC/plat/sbin"
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Application server iLO: Verify NetBackup configuration file	Open /usr/opensv/netbackup/bp.conf and make sure it points to the NetBackup Server using the following command: <pre>\$ sudo vi /usr/opensv/netbackup/bp.conf</pre> SERVER = nb75server CLIENT_NAME = 10.240.10.185 CONNECT_OPTIONS = localhost 1 0 2 Note: Verify that the above server name matches the NetBackup Server, and verify that the CLIENT_NAME matches the hostname or IP of the local client machine, if they do not, update them as necessary. Edit /etc/hosts using the following command and add the NetBackup server: <pre>\$ sudo vi /etc/hosts</pre> e.g.: 192.168.176.45 nb75server Note: The server will now periodically check to see if a new version of Netbackup Client has been installed and will perform necessary TPD configuration accordingly. At any time, the customer may now push and install a new version of Netbackup Client.

CREATE NETBACKUP CLIENT CONFIG FILE

This procedure will copy a NetBackup Client config file into the appropriate location on the TPD based application server. This config file will allow a customer to install previously unsupported versions of NetBackup Client by providing necessary information to TPD.

Appendix J 3 Create NetBackup Client Config File

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will copy a NetBackup Client config file into the appropriate location on the TPD based application server. This config file will allow a customer to install previously unsupported versions of NetBackup Client by providing necessary information to TPD.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	<p>Application server iLO: Create NetBackup Config File</p> <p>Create the NetBackup Client config file on the server using the contents that were previously determined. The config file should be placed in the <i>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles</i> directory and should follow the following naming conventions: NB\$ver.conf</p> <p>Where \$ver is the client version number with the periods removed. For the 7.5 client the value of \$ver would be 75 and the full path to the file would be: <i>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf</i></p> <p>Note: The config files must start with "NB" and must have a suffix of ".conf". The server is now capable of installing the corresponding NetBackup Client. The server is now capable of installing the corresponding NetBackup Client.</p>

Appendix J 3 Create NetBackup Client Config File

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Application server iLO: Create NetBackup Config script	<p>Create the NetBackup Client config script file on the server using the contents that were previously determined. The config script file should be placed in the <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts</code> directory. The name of the NetBackup Client config script file should be determined from the contents of the NetBackup Client config file.</p> <p>As an example for the NetBackup 7.5 client the following is applicable:</p> <p><u>NetBackup Client config:</u> <i>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf</i></p> <p><u>NetBackup Client config script:</u> <i>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts/NB75</i></p> <p>Note: Change the client config and script permission by executing the following command:</p> <p>Illustrative purposes only:</p> <pre>\$ sudo chmod 555 /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/profiles/NB75.conf \$ sudo chmod 55 /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/netbackup/scripts/NB75</pre>
-------------------------------	--	--

OPEN PORTS FOR NETBACKUP CLIENT SOFTWARE

This procedure will use iptables and ip6tables (if applicable) to open the applicable ports for the NetBackup client to communicate to the NetBackup Server.

Appendix J 4 Open ports for NetBackup Client Software

S T E P #		<p>This procedure will use iptables and ip6tables (if applicable) to open the applicable ports for the NetBackup client to communicate to the NetBackup Server.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM Server: Login	Establish an SSH session to the active NOAM server. Login as admusr .
2 <input type="checkbox"/>	Active NOAM Server: Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	<p>Change directories to <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/iptables</code></p> <pre>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/plat/etc/iptables</pre> <p>Using “vi”, create a file named <code>60netbackup.ipt</code></p> <pre>\$ sudo vi 60netbackup.ipt</pre> <p>Insert the following contents into the file:</p> <pre># NetBackup ports. # *filter -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 1556 -j ACCEPT -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 13724 -j ACCEPT -A INPUT -m state --state NEW -m tcp -p tcp --dport 13782 -j ACCEPT</pre> <p>Now save and close the file using <code>:wq</code></p> <p>Note: If system servers are to use IPv6 networks for NetBackup client-to-server communication, then repeat this procedure to create a file named <code>60netbackup.ip6t</code>, with the same contents as shown above, in the directory <code>/usr/TKLC/plat/etc/ip6tables</code>.</p>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	Standby NOAM: Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Repeat Steps 1-2 for the standby NOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.

Appendix J 4 Open ports for NetBackup Client Software

4 <input type="checkbox"/>	Active SOAM: Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Repeat Steps 1-2 for the active SOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.
<input type="checkbox"/>	Standby SOAM: Open Ports for NetBackup Client Software	Repeat Steps 1-2 for the standby SOAM to open ports for NetBackup client software.

Appendix K: Multi-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)

Appendix K 1 Mult-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will activate optional features in multi-site configurations for DR-NOAM and/or Spare SOAM servers.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	DR-NOAM: Feature Activation	<p>If the DR NOAM was configured in Procedure 14, SSH to the active DR-NOAM, login as admusr.</p> <p>Execute the following commands:</p> <p>FOR PCA:</p> <pre>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/dsr/prod/maint/loaders/activate \$./load.pcaActivateStandByAsScoped</pre> <p>FOR MAP-DIAMETER IWF:</p> <pre>\$ cd /usr/TKLC/dsr/prod/maint/loaders/activate \$./load.mapinterworkingActivateAsourced</pre> <p>For MAP-Diameter, repeat this step for the standby DR-NOAM.</p> <p>Note: If a DR-NOAM is not configured, skip this step.</p>

Appendix K 1 Mult-Site Feature Activation (DSR 7.0)

2 <input type="checkbox"/>	ACTIVE SOAM: Prepare SOAM for optional feature activation	Establish an SSH session to the Active SOAM, login as admusr . Execute the following command: <pre>\$ irem DsrApplication where "name in ('RBAR', 'FABR', 'PCA', 'MD-IWF', 'DM-IWF', 'CPA', 'GLA')"</pre>
3 <input type="checkbox"/>	ACTIVE SOAM: Verify preparation	Execute the following command to verify preparation of optional feature activation: <pre>\$ iqt -z -h -p -fname DsrApplication where "name in ('RBAR', 'FABR', 'PCA', 'MD-IWF', 'DM-IWF', 'CPA', 'GLA')"</pre> <p>Note: There should be no output of this command, if there is, verify the correct entry of the command in step 2.</p>
4 <input type="checkbox"/>	ACTIVE NOAM: Activate Optional Features	Establish an SSH session to the Active NOAM, login as admusr . Execute the following command: Follow references [2](DSR 7.0), [26] (DSR 7.1),[4], [5], [6], [7], [9] to activate any features that were previously activated.

Appendix L: IDIH Fast Deployment Configuration

The fdconfig file contains 8 sections. The following is a list of those sections with a short description:

Section	Description
Software Images	A list of the TVOE, TPD, and iDIH application versions.
TVOE Blade	Contains the Enclosure ID, OA addresses, location, name and Hardware type of an HP Blade.
TVOE RMS	Includes Hardware Type and ILO address of the Rack Mount Server.
Type	Management or Standalone
TVOE Configuration	Contains all ip addresses, hostname and network devices for the TVOE host.
Guest Configurations (3)	The guest sections contain network and hostname configuration for the Oracle, Mediation and Application guests.

Software Images

Be sure to update the software images section based on software versions you intend to install. The following table outlines typical installation failures caused by incorrect software versions. Use the "fdconfig dumpsteps -file=" command to produce output of a Fast Deployment Session.

Software Image	Element	Command Text
TVOE ISO	mgmtsrvrtvove	IPM Server
TPD ISO	Oracle,tpd Mediation,tpd Application,tpd	IPM Server
iDIH Mediation ISO	Mgmtsrvrtvove,configExt	Transfer File

iDIH Oracle ISO iDIH Mediation ISO iDIH Application ISO	Oracle,ora Mediation,med Application,app	Upgrade Server
---	--	----------------

TVOE Blade

The TVOE Blade section should be commented out if you intend to install a Rack Mount Server. Be sure to fill out the sections properly. Enclosure ID, OA IP addresses and the Bay must be correct or the PMAC will not be able to discover the blade. Hardware profiles are different for Gen8 and Gen6. Gen6 blades profiles have fewer CPU's and Ram allocated to the Guest.

TVOE RMS

The TVOE RMS section should be commented out if you intend to install a TVOE Blade. It contains the ILO ip address and Hardware profile. If the ILO IP address is incorrect the PMAC will not be able to discover the Rack Mount Server, server discovery must occur before the installation can begin.

TYPE

If your IDIH system is to be collocated with a PMAC on the same TVOE host make sure “Type=Management” is not commented out. It will setup a management network instead of an xmi network and it will remove the software stanza inside of the TVOE server stanza. If you are setting up a standalone IDIH then comment out “Type=Management” which will setup an xmi bridge.

TVOE CONFIGURATION

This section defines the hostname, network ip addresses for the TVOE bridges and it defines the network devices. You can define the devices you intend to use for bonded interfaces and the tagged bonded interfaces you intend to associate with a bridge.

Execute “cat hw_id” or hardwareInfo” command on TVOE host to get the hardware ID for the “Hw=” parameter. Note: For Gen9 (Hardware ID “ProLiantDL380Gen9”), please use Gen8’s Hardware ID (“ProLiantDL380pGen8”).

GUEST CONFIGURATION

These sections contain the hostname, IPv4 addresses, IPv4 netmask, IPv4 gateway, and IPv6 addresses. If you do not intend to configure IPv6 addresses then leave those IP addresses commented out. The IPv6 netmask is included in the IPv6 address.

Below is FDC configuration template included on the mediation ISO:

```
# Software Images
TvoeIso="TVOE-3.0.1.0.0_86.20.0-x86_64"
TpdIso="TPD.install-7.0.1.0.0_86.20.0-OracleLinux6.6-x86_64"
OraIso="oracle-7.1.0.0.0_71.14.0-x86_64"
MedIso="mediation-7.1.0.0.0_71.14.0-x86_64"
AppIso="apps-7.1.0.0.0_71.14.0-x86_64"

# Tvoe Blade OA IP and Bay uncomment if this server is blade #EncId="1401"
#Oa1="10.250.51.197"
#Oa2="10.250.51.198"
#Bay="15F"
#Hw="ProLiantBL460cGen8"
#Hw="ProLiantBL460cGen6"

# Tvoe RMS Out of Band Management IP and Hw # Comment these lines if server is blade OobIp="10.250.34.24"
Hw="ProLiantDL380pGen8"
#Hw="SUNNETRAX4270M3"

# Comment this line out if server is standalone Type="Management"

# Tvoe Config
#
TvoeName="thunderbolt"
TvoeIp="10.250.51.8"
Mask="255.255.255.0"
Gateway="10.250.51.1"
TvoeNtp="10.250.32.10"
TvoeIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::4/64"
TvoeIp6Gw="fe80::0"
# xmibond
XmiDev="bond0"
XmiEth="eth01,eth02"
# imibond
ImiDev="bond1"
ImiEth="eth03,eth04"
# xmi/management
MgmtInt="bond0.3"
MgmtIntType="Vlan"
MgmtIntVlanid="3"
# imi
ImiInt="bond1.5"
ImiIntType="Vlan"
ImiIntVlanid="5"

# Oracle Guest Config
OraName="thunderbolt-ora"
OraIp="10.250.51.6"
OraMask=$Mask
OraGw=$Gateway
OraIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::5/64"
OraIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"

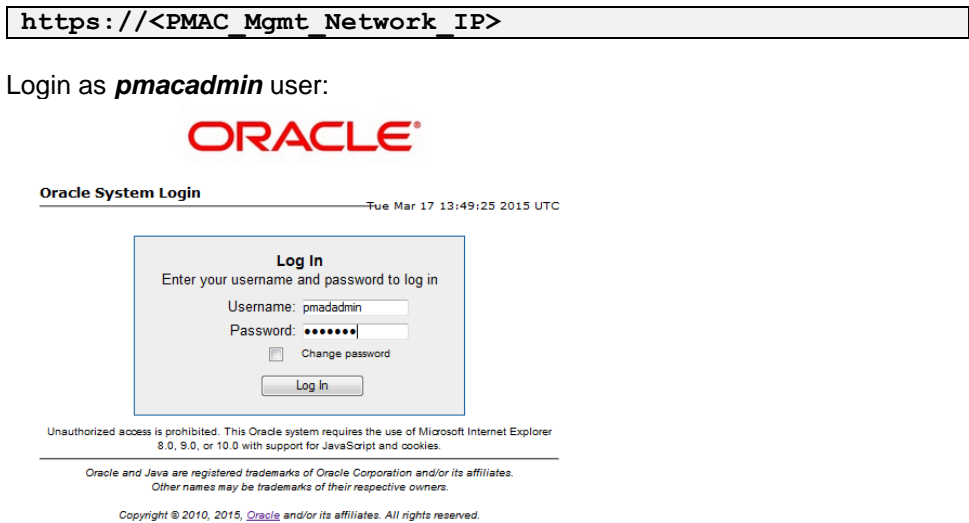
# Mediation Guest Config
MedName="thunderbolt-med"
MedIp="10.250.51.10"
MedMask=$Mask
MedGw=$Gateway
ImiIp="192.168.32.11"
ImiMask="255.255.255.224"
MedIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::6/64"
MedIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"
ImiIp6="2608:f0d0:1002:51::6/64"

# Application Guest Config
AppName="thunderbolt-app"
AppIp="10.250.51.11"
AppMask=$Mask
AppGw=$Gateway
AppIp6="2607:f0d0:1002:51::7/64"
AppIp6Gw="$TvoeIp6Gw"
```

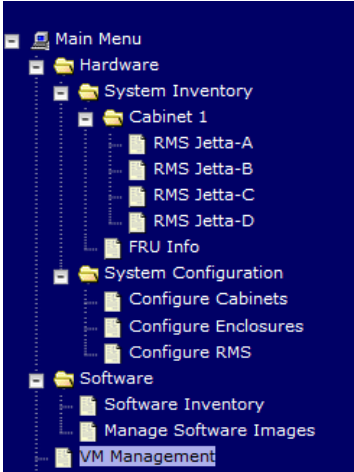

Appendix M: IDIH External Drive Removal

This procedure should only be run if the user intends to do a fresh installation on an existing IDIH.

Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

S T E P #	<p>This procedure will destroy all of the data in the Oracle Database.</p> <p>Warning: Do not perform this procedure on an IDIH system unless you intend to do a fresh TVOE installation.</p> <p>Check off (✓) each step as it is completed. Boxes have been provided for this purpose under each step number.</p> <p>If this procedure fails, contact Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS), and ask for assistance.</p>	
1 <input type="checkbox"/>	PMAC GUI: Login	<p>Open web browser and enter:</p> <div><a href="https://<PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP>">https://<PMAC_Mgmt_Network_IP></div> <p>Login as <i>pmacadmin</i> user:</p> 

Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

<p>2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>PMAC GUI: Delete VMs if Needed</p>	<p>Before a re-installation can be performed, the IDIH VMs must be removed first.</p> <p>Navigate to Main Menu -> VM Management</p>  <p>Select each of the IDIH VMs and select the Delete button.</p> 
<p>3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH TVOE HOST: Login</p>	<p>Establish an SSH session to the TVOE host, login as admusr</p>
<p>4.1</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH TVOE HOST: Verify External Drive Exists for HP BL460 Blade</p>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for HP BL460 Blade:</p> <pre>\$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=3 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Smart Array P410i in Slot 3 array A logicaldrive 1 (3.3 TB, RAID 1+0, OK)</pre>

Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

<p>4.2</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH TVOE HOST: Verify External Drive Exists for HP DL380 Gen8 RMS</p>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for HP DL380 Gen8 RMS:</p> <pre>\$ sudo hpssacli ctrl slot=2 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Smart Array P420 in Slot 2 array A logicaldrive 1 (1.1 TB, RAID 1+0, OK)</pre>
<p>4.3</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH TVOE HOST: Verify External Drive Exists for Netra X3</p>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for Netra X3:</p> <pre>\$ sudo megaccli -ldinfo -ll -a0 head</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Adapter 0 -- Virtual Drive Information: Virtual Drive: 1 (Target Id: 1) Name : RAID Level : Primary-1, Secondary-0, RAID Level Qualifier-0 Size : 1.633 TB Mirror Data : 1.633 TB State : Optimal Strip Size : 64 KB</pre>
<p>4.4</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/></p>	<p>IDIH TVOE HOST: Verify External Drive Exists for HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</p>	<p>Execute the following command to verify the external drive exists for HP DL380 Gen9 RMS:</p> <pre>\$ hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld all show</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Smart Array P440ar in Slot 0 (Embedded) array A logicaldrive 1 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK) array B logicaldrive 2 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK) array C logicaldrive 3 (838.3 GB, RAID 1, OK)</pre>

Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

5.1 <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH TVOE HOST: Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for HP BL460 Blade	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for HP BL460 Blade:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean hpdisk --slot=3</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Called with options: hpdisk --slot=3 WARNING: This will destroy all application data on the server! Continue? [Y/N]</pre>
5.2 <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH TVOE HOST: Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for HP DL380 Gen8 RMS	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for HP DL380 Gen8 RMS:</p> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean hpdisk --slot=2</pre> <p>The following information should be displayed:</p> <pre>Called with options: hpdisk --slot=2 WARNING: This will destroy all application data on the server! Continue? [Y/N]</pre>
5.3.1 <input type="checkbox"/>	IDIH TVOE HOST: Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for Netra X3 with one external disk	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for Netra X3 with one external disk:</p> <pre>\$ sudo vgs VG #PV #LV #SN Attr VSize VFree external 1 1 0 wz--n- 1.63t 73.58g vgguests 1 6 0 wz--n- 538.56g 138.56g vgroot 1 6 0 wz--n- 19.00g 4.25g</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external --level=scrub \$ sudo megacli -cfglddel -l1 -a0</pre>

Appendix M 1 IDIH External Drive Removal

<p>5.3.2</p> <p>□</p>	<p>IDIH TVOE HOST: Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for Netra X3 with three external disks</p>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for Netra X3 with three external disks:</p> <pre>\$ sudo vgs VG #PV #LV #SN Attr VSize VFree external1 1 1 0 wz--n- 557.86g 24.86g external2 1 1 0 wz--n- 557.86g 24.86g external3 1 1 0 wz--n- 557.86g 24.86g vgguests 1 6 0 wz--n- 538.56g 138.56g vgroot 1 6 0 wz--n- 19.00g 4.25g</pre> <pre>\$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external3 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external2 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool \ --poolName=external1 --level=pv \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external3 --level=scrub \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external2 --level=scrub \$ sudo /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm \ --vgName=external1 --level=scrub</pre> <pre>[root@hellcat ~]# sudo megacli -cfglddel -l3 -a0 [root@hellcat ~]# sudo megacli -cfglddel -l2 -a0 [root@hellcat ~]# sudo megacli -cfglddel -l1 -a0</pre>
<p>5.4</p> <p>□</p>	<p>IDIH TVOE HOST: Remove the External Drive and Volume Group for HP DL380 Gen9 RMS</p>	<p>Execute the following command to remote the external drive and volume group for HP DL380 Gen9 RMS:</p> <pre>\$ /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool -- \ poolName=external2 --level=pv \$ /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean pool -- \ poolName=external1 --level=pv \$ /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm -- \ vgName=external2 --level=scrub \$ /usr/TKLC/plat/sbin/storageClean lvm -- \ vgName=external1 --level=scrub \$ hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld 3 delete \$ hpssacli ctrl slot=0 ld 2 delete</pre>

Appendix N: Disable/Enable DTLS

DSR 7.1 ONLY

Oracle is introducing SCTP Datagram Transport Layer Security (DTLS) in DSR 7.1 by enabling SCTP AUTH extensions by default. SCTP AUTH extensions are required for SCTP DTLS. However, there are known impacts with SCTP AUTH extensions as covered by the CVEs referenced below. It is highly recommended that customers installing DSR 7.1 should prepare clients before the DSR connections are established after installation. This will ensure the DSR to Client SCTP connection will establish with SCTP AUTH extensions enabled. See RFC 6083. If customers DO NOT prepare clients to accommodate the DTLS changes, then the SCTP connections to client devices WILL NOT establish after the DSR is installed.

<https://access.redhat.com/security/cve/CVE-2015-1421>

<https://access.redhat.com/security/cve/CVE-2014-5077>

Execute procedures in [29] to disable/enable the DTLS feature.

Appendix O: My Oracle Support (MOS)

MOS (<https://support.oracle.com>) is your initial point of contact for all product support and training needs. A representative at Customer Access Support (CAS) can assist you with MOS registration.

Call the CAS main number at **1-800-223-1711** (toll-free in the US), or call the Oracle Support hotline for your local country from the list at <http://www.oracle.com/us/support/contact/index.html>.

When calling, there are multiple layers of menu selections. Make the selections in the sequence shown below on the Support telephone menu:

- 1) For the first set of menu options, select 2, "New Service Request". You will hear another set of menu options.
- 2) In this set of menu options, select 3, "Hardware, Networking and Solaris Operating System Support". A third set of menu options begins.
- 3) In the third set of options, select 2, "Non-technical issue". Then you will be connected to a live agent who can assist you with MOS registration and provide Support. Identifiers. Simply mention you are a Tekelec Customer new to MOS.